Lingua Latina Legenda: an open-source introduction to Latin

Work in progress for use in fall '22 courses

Daniel Libatique, Dominic Machado, Neel Smith

September 6, 2022

Contents

1 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

2 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, "Subordination," in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, "Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns,and adjectives" requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, "Subordination," about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, "Richer sentences," covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/.

3 Preliminaries

3.1 Alphabet and pronounciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronounciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronouncation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letter were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

3.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

3.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always "hard" (like "cut" and "go", never like "cease" or "gyrate").
- S is always unvoiced (like "cease"), never a z-sound (like "ease")
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "y"
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "w"
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

3.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have "pure" sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	*mater*, "mother"
E	deck	*terra*, "earth"
I	see	*hic*, "he, this person"
O	no	*homo*, "person, human being"
U	do	*factum*, "deed, accomplishment"

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	*quaero*, "I seek"
au	*autem*, "however"
ei	*Deianira*, a wife of Hercules
eu	*Theseus*, an Athenian hero
oe	*poena*, "penalty, punishment"
ui	*fluit*, "it flows"

3.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consonantal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V) .

3.3 Syllables and accent

3.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les poe-na*, *quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. *or* a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g, the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. *except* that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b, d, g, p, t, c,* or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

3.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

- *a-mī-cus*, "friend," has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
- *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

- pronounce *căp-ŭt*, "head" as *cáput*.

4 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

4.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
- Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

4.2 Latin: an inflected language

4.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: "dog" means only one, but "dogs" means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

> **Aside:** English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: "she says" but "they say." We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: "The dogs run," but "The dog runs."

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: "mouse" is a singular noun, and "mice" is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. "Moose" could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And "deer" poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, "The moose walks," and "The moose walk." The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, "moose" is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

4.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin's system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. "Dog bites man" is an everyday sentence: the subject is "Dog," and the direct object is "man." "Man bites dog" is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

> **Aside** You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we'll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin's more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus' *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

4.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don't simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to "chunk" the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As [Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, "Verb: that's what happening](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IrfZCvTe-Ko).") A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you "Coffee or tea?" they are implying "Would you like coffee or tea?" a sentence with a subject ("you") and verb ("would like").

We have borrowed our own word "verb" from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a "sentence," "expression," or evern "conversation." *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

4.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice.** To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or "helping") verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

4.4.1 Person

A verb's person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the "speaker" of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

4.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural.** In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

4.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

4.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker's conception. "Mood" and "mode" come from the same root in English: the "mood" of a verb is the "mode" in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

4.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb ("I love"), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb ("I am loved").

4.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb's **principal parts.**

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

4.6 Forms of prinicipal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form ("I") of the indicative mood. We'll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we'll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the

2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We'll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You'll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.

3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.

4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We'll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

4.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- āre : first conjugation
- ēre : second conjugation
- ĕre: third conjugation
- īre: fourth conjugation

4.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus - to love
- audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus - to hear
- capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus - to take, seize
- dō, dāre, dedī, datus - to give
- dūcō, dūcĕre, dūxī, ductus - to lead
- faciō, facĕre, fēcī, factus - to make, do
- fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus - to flee
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus - to have
- interficiō, interficĕre, interfēcī, interfectus - to kill
- mittō, mittĕre, mīsī, missus - to send
- veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus - to come
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, visus - to see;

4.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are amō and audiō. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as amō. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-īre* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-īvī* for the second part, and *-ītus* for the fourth part.

4.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means "he came, arrived" or "she came, arrived"; the form *venērunt* means "they came, arrived." These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for "he," "she" or "they."

4.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

4.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct,* the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the "simple past," the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other "helping" verbs. Examples of the "simple past" in the active voice: "He walked," "she ran," "they watched," "She taught," "they learned."

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

```
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"
```

you know that vēnī means "I came."

4.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you'll follow for forming inflected words is:

· find the correct stem
· apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

```
(1) veni -> ven-
```

Let's express "They arrived," a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

```
(2) ven + ērunt -> venērunt
```

Voilà! You've just expressed the English idea "They arrived." with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt.*

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus* - "to flee."

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fug**it**, "he, she fled"	fug**ērunt**, "they fled"

4.8 The perfect passive

4.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence "As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands" is in the **active voice.** "Hercules" is the subject; the verb, "killed," is in the active voice, and "two serpents" is the direct object of the erb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. "Two serpents were killed by Hercules" is in the **passive voice.** The grammatical subject is "two serpents," but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they're receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what's important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco, necāre, necaui, necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit.*

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, "the serpents were killed"? Let's look at how to form the perfect passive.

4.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms.** They use a form the verb "to be" together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we'll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle.** This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence "the serpents were killed" uses a form of the form "to be" plus a participle, "killed," to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of "to be," however. You'll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb "to be" creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, "He was killed."

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We'll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let's note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

> (1) necatus -> necat-

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We'll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we'll use the ending *-i*.

> (2) necat- + -i -> necati

Our form of "to be" will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: "they (masculine) were killed." Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, "Mistakes were made.")

- use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:
    - gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
    - **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject
- memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

4.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional "helping" verbs: "she was going," "he started to go," "they used to go."

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying "he had one eye." In English, we can use the simple past tense "had" to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

```
unum oculum habebat.
```

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let's look at how it's formed.

4.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

> · stem: drop -re of second part
>
> · endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

· (1) start by dropping *-re* from the second part:

> habēre -> habē-

· (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

> habē- + -bat -> habebat

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because "he was not hindered by any darkness." Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, "to restrain, prevent" is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

```
inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus
```

(1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

> inhibēre -> inhibē-

(2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

> inhibē- + -batur -> inhibebatur

4.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that "thing" is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: "noun" comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means "name."

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the the verb, the recipient of the verb's action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may decribe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun's stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

4.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number.**

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders.** Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit's section on "Latin in Action.") There is no particular reason that the noun for "river", *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for "island", *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative.** In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

4.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviat *m, f* or *n.*

4.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries   The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is flumen; the genitive singular form is fluminis; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is insula; the genitive singular form is insulae; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cănis, cănis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically masculine *or* grammatically feminine.

4.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first, second and third declensions.** You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

4.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition "of," it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

4.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis*. *potentia* is a nominative noun, "power, strength;" *canis* is genitive singular, "dog." Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition "of" or with the possessive marker "'s," "the dog's strength," or "the strength of the dog."
- *Subjective genitive* or *objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis*. *amor, amoris* f. means "love, admiration". There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like "love of God." Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are intepreting the meaning of the phrase "of God" as the equivalent of the subject of a verb "to love." But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting "of God" as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like "they love God." In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus' love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog's love for Cephalus, but grammaticaly the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog's love.

Hyginus' story of Erechtheus' four daughters illutrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or "whole," when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive* or *genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus' daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum*. As we'll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning "them"; *una* is a nominative form meaning "one woman."

4.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

```
Theseus uenit
```

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei*, m," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject Theseus.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

```
Septem ductores ibant
```

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*,"to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

4.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

4.13.1 TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list

4.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

- · introduce adjectives as part of speech
- · introduce noun-adjective agreement
- · introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive

4.15 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

· introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
· introduce pronominal use
· introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
· introduce adjectival use

4.16 The personal agent of passive verbs

· introduce the **ablative** case
· forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

4.16.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

· pure ablative

4.17 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

4.17.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

> Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

4.17.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object.**

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb "to give." (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, "the case connected with giving.") In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as "to."

> "Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divien arrows." or "Hercules gave his divine arrows to him."

In both sentences "arrows" is the direct object of the verb "gave": the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is "him" (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition "to."

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

> Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

4.18 Prepositions

4.19 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb.** The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

4.19.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb.** An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running, raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. ("The girl ran.")
- Timent. ("They are frightened.")

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like "The girl ran three miles" has a direct object. However, "three miles" is the shortened form of "for three miles", an adverbial phrase that describes the word "ran." We'll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

4.19.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let's consider the verb *facere* ("to make" in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - "the farmer made", the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, "What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?"

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., "the farmer made pizza"). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can't do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case**. Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **fīliam** amāvit ("The father loved his daughter.")
- Fīliī **matrēs** amant. ("The sons love their mother.")
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. ("The wife was helping the farmer.")
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum** et **terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. ("The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.")

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence "the farmer gave the girl a pizza", the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word "girl" is an **indirect object**, the recipient of

the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as "to/for X". So in Latin "the farmer gave the girl a pizza" looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is "The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**."

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

4.19.3 Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive** verb. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. ("The girl was seen.")
- Virī captī sunt. ("The men were captured.")

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. ("The girl was seen by her mother.")
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. ("The men were captured by the women.")

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

- Pizza **puellae** data est. ("The pizza was given to the girl.")

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

- An ablative of agent
- Indirect object in the dative

4.19.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender.** The most common linking verb in English and Latin is "to be" (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

- Vir pater est. ("The man is a father.")
- Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. ("The boys are strong and brave.")

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir, puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater, magnī* [*et*] *fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

4.19.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb.** If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive;** if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking.** It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like "to carry") and or only intransitively (verbs like "to rain"), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

5 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

5.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
- Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
- Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
- Read more complex Latin sentences

6 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

6.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

7 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

7.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

8 Some less freqent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

8.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

- Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

9 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

10 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

11 Reference

12 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
- 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
- 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
- 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
- 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear

---

12.1 Indicative - Active

12.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**ō**	mone**ō**	reg**ō**	capi**ō**	audi**ō**
2nd sg.	amā**s**	monē**s**	regis	capis	audī**s**
3rd sg.	amat	monet	regit	capit	audit
1st pl.	amā**mus**	monē**mus**	regi**mus**	capi**mus**	audī**mus**
2nd pl.	amā**tis**	monē**tis**	regi**tis**	capi**tis**	audī**tis**
3rd pl.	ama**nt**	mone**nt**	regu**nt**	capiu**nt**	audiu**nt**

12.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amā**bam**	monē**bam**	regē**bam**	capiē**bam**	audiē**bam**
2nd sg.	amā**bās**	monē**bās**	regē**bās**	capiē**bās**	audiē**bās**
3rd sg.	amā**bat**	monē**bat**	regē**bat**	capiē**bat**	audiē**bat**
1st pl.	amā**bāmus**	monē**bāmus**	regē**bāmus**	capiē**bāmus**	audiē**bāmus**
2nd pl.	amā**bātis**	monē**bātis**	regē**bātis**	capiē**bātis**	audiē**bātis**
3rd pl.	amā**bant**	monē**bant**	regē**bant**	capiē**bant**	audiē**bant**

12.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amā**bō**	monē**bō**	reg**am**	capi**am**	audi**am**
2nd sg.	amā**bis**	monē**bis**	reg**ēs**	capi**ēs**	audi**ēs**
3rd sg.	amā**bit**	monē**bit**	reg**et**	capi**et**	audi**et**
1st pl.	amā**bimus**	monē**bimus**	reg**ēmus**	capi**ēmus**	audi**ēmus**
2nd pl.	amā**bitis**	monē**bitis**	reg**ētis**	capi**ētis**	audi**ētis**
3rd pl.	amā**bunt**	monē**bunt**	reg**ent**	capi**ent**	audi**ent**

12.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amā**vī**	mon**uī**	rex**ī**	cēp**ī**	audī**vī**
2nd sg.	amā**vistī**	mon**uistī**	rex**istī**	cēp**istī**	audī**vistī**
3rd sg.	amā**vit**	mon**uit**	rex**it**	cēp**it**	audī**vit**
1st pl.	amā**vimus**	mon**uimus**	rex**imus**	cēp**imus**	audī**vimus**
2nd pl.	amā**vistis**	mon**uistis**	rex**istis**	cēp**istis**	audī**vistis**
3rd pl.	amā**vērunt**	mon**uērunt**	rex**ērunt**	cēp**ērunt**	audī**vērunt**

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

12.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audīveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audīverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audīverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audīverant

12.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audīverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audīveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

12.2 Indicative - Passive

12.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

12.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

12.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

12.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	audītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	audītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	audītus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

12.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	audītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	audītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	audītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

12.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	audītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	audītus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	audītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

12.3 Subjunctive - Active

12.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**em**	mon**eam**	reg**am**	cap**iam**	aud**iam**
2nd sg.	am**ēs**	mon**eās**	reg**ās**	cap**iās**	aud**iās**
3rd sg.	am**et**	mon**eat**	reg**at**	cap**iat**	aud**iat**
1st pl.	am**ēmus**	mon**eāmus**	reg**āmus**	cap**iāmus**	aud**iāmus**
2nd pl.	am**ētis**	mon**eātis**	reg**ātis**	cap**iātis**	aud**iātis**
3rd pl.	am**ent**	mon**eant**	reg**ant**	cap**iant**	aud**iant**

12.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

12.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

12.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuissem	rexissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

12.4 Subjunctive - Passive

12.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
3rd sg.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2nd pl.	amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
3rd pl.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

12.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
2nd sg.	amārēris	monērē*ris**	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
3rd sg.	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2nd pl.	amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
3rd pl.	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

12.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	audītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

12.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	audītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

---

12.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audīre
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

12.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	ama**ndum**	mone**ndum**	rege**ndum**	capie**ndum**	audie**ndum**
Gerundive	ama**ndus, -a, -um**	mone**ndus, -a, -um**	rege**ndus, -a, -um**	capie**ndus, -a, -um**	audie**ndus, -a, -um**

13 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
- 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
- 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
- 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
- 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of

---

13.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

13.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horto**r**	vereo**r**	loquo**r**	morio**r**	potio**r**
2nd sg.	hortā**ris**	verē**ris**	loque**ris**	more**ris**	potī**ris**
3rd sg.	hortā**tur**	verē**tur**	loqui**tur**	mori**tur**	potī**tur**
1st pl.	hortā**mur**	verē**mur**	loqui**mur**	mori**mur**	potī**mur**
2nd pl.	hortā**minī**	verē**minī**	loqui**minī**	mori**minī**	potī**minī**
3rd pl.	horta**ntur**	vere**ntur**	loquu**ntur**	moriu**ntur**	potiu**ntur**

13.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortā**bar**	verē**bar**	loquē**bar**	moriē**bar**	potiē**bar**
2nd sg.	hortā**bāris**	verē**bāris**	loquē**bāris**	moriē**bāris**	potiē**bāris**
3rd sg.	hortā**bātur**	verē**bātur**	loquē**bātur**	moriē**bātur**	potiē**bātur**
1st pl.	hortā**bāmur**	verē**bāmur**	loquē**bāmur**	moriē**bāmur**	potiē**bāmur**
2nd pl.	hortā**bāminī**	verē**bāminī**	loquē**bāminī**	moriē**bāminī**	potiē**bāminī**
3rd pl.	hortā**bantur**	verē**bantur**	loquē**bantur**	moriē**bantur**	potiē**bantur**

13.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortā**bor**	verē**bor**	loqu**ar**	mori**ar**	poti**ar**
2nd sg.	hortā**beris**	verē**beris**	loqu**ēris**	mori**ēris**	poti**ēris**
3rd sg.	hortā**bitur**	verē**bitur**	loqu**ētur**	mori**ētur**	poti**ētur**
1st pl.	hortā**bimur**	verē**bimur**	loqu**ēmur**	mori**ēmur**	poti**ēmur**
2nd pl.	hortā**biminī**	verē**biminī**	loqu**ēminī**	mori**ēminī**	poti**ēminī**
3rd pl.	hortā**buntur**	verē**buntur**	loqu**entur**	mori**entur**	poti**entur**

13.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

13.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

13.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

---

13.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

13.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horter	verear	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortēris	vereāris	loquāris	moriāris	potiāris
3rd sg.	hortētur	vereātur	loquātur	moriātur	potiātur
1st pl.	hortēmur	vereāmur	loquāmur	moriāmur	potiāmur
2nd pl.	hortēminī	vereāminī	loquāminī	moriāminī	potiāminī
3rd pl.	hortentur	vereantur	loquantur	moriantur	potiantur

13.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	morerer	potīrer

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārē**ris**	verērē**ris**	loquerē**ris**	morerē**ris**	potīrē**ris**
3rd sg.	hortārē**tur**	verērē**tur**	loquerē**tur**	morerē**tur**	potīrē**tur**
1st pl.	hortārē**mur**	verērē**mur**	loquerē**mur**	morerē**mur**	potīrē**mur**
2nd pl.	hortārē**minī**	verērē**minī**	loquerē**minī**	morerē**minī**	potīrē**minī**
3rd pl.	hortāre**ntur**	verēre**ntur**	loquere**ntur**	morere**ntur**	potīre**ntur**

13.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sīs	veritus, -a, -um sīs	locutus, -a, -um sīs	mortuus, -a, -um sīs	potītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

13.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

13.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

13.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	horta**ndum**	vere**ndum**	loque**ndum**	morie**ndum**	potie**ndum**
Gerundive	horta**ndus, -a, -um**	vere**ndus, -a, -um**	loque**ndus, -a, -um**	morie**ndus, -a, -um**	potie**ndus, -a, -um**

14 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

14.1 First Declension

14.1.1 *puella, puellae,* f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puell**a**	puell**ae**
Genitive	puell**ae**	puell**ārum**
Dative	puell**ae**	puell**īs**
Accusative	puell**am**	puell**ās**
Ablative	puell**ā**	puell**īs**

14.2 Second Declension Masculine

14.2.1 *maritus, maritī,* m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	marit**us**	marit**ī**
Genitive	marit**ī**	marit**ōrum**

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**
Accusative	marit**um**	marit**ōs**
Ablative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**

14.2.2 *ager, agrī,* m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agr**ī**
Genitive	agr**ī**	agr**ōrum**
Dative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**
Accusative	agr**um**	agr**ōs**
Ablative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**

14.3 Second Declension Neuter

14.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī,* n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Genitive	exempl**ī**	exempl**ōrum**
Dative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**
Accusative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Ablative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**

14.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.4.1 *mater, matris,* f. - mother

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	māter*	mātr**ēs**
Genitive	mātr**is**	mātr**um**
Dative	mātr**ī**	mātr**ibus**
Accusative	mātr**em**	mātr**ēs**
Ablative	mātr**e**	mātr**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

14.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

14.5.1 *urbs, urbis,* f. - city

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	urbs*	urb**ēs**
Genitive	urb**is**	urb**ium****
Dative	urb**ī**	urb**ibus**
Accusative	urb**em**	urb**ēs**
Ablative	urb**e**	urb**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium*, rather than simply *-um*.

14.6 Third Declension Neuter

14.6.1 *nōmen, nōminis*, n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmin**a**
Genitive	nōmin**is**	nōmin**um**
Dative	nōmin**ī**	nōmin**ibus**
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmin**a****
Ablative	nōmin**e**	nōmin**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

14.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem

14.7.1 *mare, maris*, n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	mar**ia*****
Genitive	mar**is**	mar**ium*****
Dative	mar**ī**	mar**ibus**
Accusative	mare**	mar**ia*****
Ablative	mar**ī*****	mar**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singlar ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

14.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.8.1 *manus, manūs*, f. - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	man**us**	man**ūs**
Genitive	man**ūs**	man**uum**
Dative	man**uī**	man**ibus**
Accusative	man**um**	man**ūs**
Ablative	man**ū**	man**ibus**

14.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

14.9.1 *genū, genūs*, n. - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Genitive	gen**ūs**	gen**uum**
Dative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**
Accusative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Ablative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**

14.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

14.10.1 *rēs, reī,* f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	rēs	rēs
Genitive	reī	rērum
Dative	reī	rēbus
Accusative	rem	rēs
Ablative	rē	rēbus

14.10.2 *diēs, diēī,* m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	diēs	diēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus

15 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

15.1 2-1-2 adjectives

15.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Genitive	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dative	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Accusative	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Ablative	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Genitive	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Accusative	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Ablative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

15.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Genitive	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dative	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Accusative	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ablative	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Genitive	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Accusative	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ablative	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

15.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

15.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	nullus*	nulla	nullum**
Genitive	nullīus	nullīus	nullīus
Dative	nullī	nullī	nullī

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	null**um**	null**am**	null**um**
Ablative	null**ō**	null**ā**	null**ō**

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter, altera, alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius, alia, aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	null**ī**	null**ae**	null**a**
Genitive	null**ōrum**	null**ārum**	null**ōrum**
Dative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**
Accusative	null**ōs**	null**ās**	null**a**
Ablative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**

15.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

15.3.1 *ācer, ācris, ācre* - keen, sharp

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācr**is**	ācr**e**
Genitive	ācr**is**	ācr**is**	ācr**is**
Dative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**
Accusative	ācr**em**	ācr**em**	ācr**e**
Ablative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

15.4 Two-Termination Adjectives

15.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**

15.5 One-Termination Adjectives

15.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapient**is**	sapient**is**
Dative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**
Accusative	sapient**em**	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Genitive	sapient**ium**	sapient**ium**
Dative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**
Accusative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Ablative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**

15.6 Interrogative

15.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

15.7 Declinable Numerals

15.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

15.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - two

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

15.7.3 *trēs, tria* - three

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

16 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus - to be
- eō, īre, īvī/iī, ītus - to go
- ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
- volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
- nōlō, nolle, noluī - not to want
- mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer

16.1 Indicative - Active

16.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

16.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ībam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ībās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ībat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ībātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ībant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

16.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ībō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ībis	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ībit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ībimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ībitis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ībunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

16.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	īvī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	īstī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	īstis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	īere	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

16.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

16.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

16.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

16.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	feriminī
3rd	fertur	feruntur

16.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāminī
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

16.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēminī
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

16.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

16.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

16.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

16.3 Subjunctive - Active

16.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

16.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

16.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

16.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īssem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īsset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

---

16.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

16.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

16.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

16.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

16.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

16.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferrī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

16.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eu**ndum**	fere**ndum**
Gerundive	eu**ndus, -a, -um**	fere**ndus, -a, -um**

17 Pronouns - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

17.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

17.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

17.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

17.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

17.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ___, ___self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dative	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

17.3 Personal

17.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

17.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

17.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

17.4 Reflexive

17.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

17.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

17.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

17.5 Interrogative

17.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

17.6 Relative

17.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

18 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occuring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae.* You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

> These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocbulary entry for a form like iussit (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus.

19 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab *or* a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

20   Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifyiing pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

21 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- accipio, accipĕre, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
- adduco, adducĕre, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
- aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*) : *to say, assert*
- amitto, amittĕre, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
- amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
- appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
- audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
- cano, canĕre, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
- capio, capĕre, cepi, captus: *to seize*
- coepio, coepĕre, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
- cognosco, cognoscĕre, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
- commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
- comprimo, comprimĕre, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
- concumbo, concumbĕre, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
- conicio (*or* coicio, *or* conjicio), conjicĕre, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
- constituo,constituĕre, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
- consumo, consumĕre, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
- contendo, contendĕre, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
- converto, convertĕre, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
- cresco, crescĕre, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
- dedo, dedĕre, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
- defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
- dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictus: *to say*
- do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
- duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
- eo, ire, ii *or* ivi, -: *to go*
- exeo, exire, exivi *or* exii, exitus: *to go out*
- expono, exponĕre, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
- facio, facĕre, feci, factus: *to make*
- fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiĕri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponĕre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii *or* iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficĕre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungĕre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittĕre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to war*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nisus *or* nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish..not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio *or* objicio, obicĕre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidĕre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendĕre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parĕre, peperi, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutĕre, percussi, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducĕre, perduxi, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereo, perire, perivi *or* perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petĕre, petivi *or* petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponĕre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficĕre, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugĕre, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerĕre, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapĕre, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipĕre, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi *or* redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli *or* retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondēre, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi *or* sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solēre, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollĕre, sustuli, sublatus: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradĕre, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni ventus: *to come*
- video, vidēre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivĕre, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

22 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, beneficii *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympha, nymphae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- procus, proci *m*: *suitor*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagitta *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f* : *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f* : *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f* : *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f* : *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f* : *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f* : *wish, will*

23 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- alius, alia, aliud: *another*
- alter, altera, alterum: *other* (*of two*)
- ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other, the remainder*
- duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
- idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
- inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
- liber, libera, liberum: *free*
- magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
- mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
- multus, multa, multum: *much* (*sg.*)*, many* (*pl.*)
- omnis, omnis: *each* (*sg.*)*, all* (*pl.*)
- primus, prima, primum: *first*
- regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
- sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
- septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
- socius, socia, socium: *allied*
- suus, sua, suum: **reflexive possessive adjective*, his own, her own*
- tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
- unus, una, unum: *a single*

24 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ibi: *there*
- inde: *from there*
- ita: *so*
- item: *likewise, also*
- non: *not*
- postea: *later*
- tunc: *then*

25 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· atque *or* ac: and, and besides, and even
· autem: however, nonetheless
· cum: when
· dum: while
· et: and
· itaque: and so, accordingly
· nam: for
· neque *or* nec: not, and not, also not
· ne: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
· postquam: after
· quia: since
· quod: because
· quoniam: since
· sed: but
· sive: or
· si: if
· ubi: where, when
· unde: from where
· ut: *conjunction introducting several kinds of subordinate clauses* date: September 6, 2022 —

26 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

27 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, "Subordination," in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, "Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns,and adjectives" requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, "Subordination," about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, "Richer sentences," covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/.

28 Preliminaries

28.1 Alphabet and pronounciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronounciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronounciation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letter were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

28.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

28.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always "hard" (like "cut" and "go", never like "cease" or "gyrate").
- S is always unvoiced (like "cease"), never a z-sound (like "ease")
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "y"
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "w"
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

28.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have "pure" sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	*mater*, "mother"
E	deck	*terra*, "earth"
I	see	*hic*, "he, this person"
O	no	*homo*, "person, human being"
U	do	*factum*, "deed, accomplishment"

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	*quaero*, "I seek"
au	*autem*, "however"
ei	*Deianira*, a wife of Hercules
eu	*Theseus*, an Athenian hero
oe	*poena*, "penalty, punishment"
ui	*fluit*, "it flows"

28.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consonantal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V) .

28.3 Syllables and accent

28.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les poe-na*, *quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. *or* a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g, the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. *except* that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b, d, g, p, t, c,* or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

28.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

· *a-mī-cus*, "friend," has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
· *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

· pronounce *căp-ŭt*, "head" as *cáput*.

29 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

29.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

· Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
· Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

29.2 Latin: an inflected language

29.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: "dog" means only one, but "dogs" means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

> **Aside:** English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: "she says" but "they say." We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: "The dogs run," but "The dog runs."

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: "mouse" is a singular noun, and "mice" is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. "Moose" could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And "deer" poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, "The moose walks," and "The moose walk." The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, "moose" is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

29.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin's system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. "Dog bites man" is an everyday sentence: the subject is "Dog," and the direct object is "man." "Man bites dog" is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

> **Aside** You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we'll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin's more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus' *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

29.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don't simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to "chunk" the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As [Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, "Verb: that's what happening](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IrfZCvTe-Ko).") A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you "Coffee or tea?" they are implying "Would you like coffee or tea?" a sentence with a subject ("you") and verb ("would like").

We have borrowed our own word "verb" from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a "sentence," "expression," or evern "conversation." *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

29.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice.** To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or "helping") verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

29.4.1 Person

A verb's person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the "speaker" of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

29.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural.** In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

29.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

29.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker's conception. "Mood" and "mode" come from the same root in English: the "mood" of a verb is the "mode" in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

---

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

29.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb ("I love"), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb ("I am loved").

29.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb's **principal parts**.

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

29.6 Forms of prinicipal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form ("I") of the indicative mood. We'll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we'll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the
2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We'll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You'll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.
3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.
4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We'll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

29.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- āre : first conjugation
- ēre : second conjugation
- ĕre: third conjugation
- īre: fourth conjugation

29.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus - to love
- audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus - to hear
- capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus - to take, seize
- dō, dāre, dedī, datus - to give
- dūcō, dūcĕre, dūxī, ductus - to lead
- faciō, facĕre, fēcī, factus - to make, do
- fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus - to flee
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus - to have
- interficiō, interficĕre, interfēcī, interfectus - to kill
- mittō, mittĕre, mīsī, missus - to send
- veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus - to come
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, visus - to see;

29.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are amō and audiō. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as amō. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-īre* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-īvī* for the second part, and *-ītus* for the fourth part.

29.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means "he came, arrived" or "she came, arrived"; the form *venērunt* means "they came, arrived." These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for "he," "she" or "they."

29.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

29.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct,* the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the "simple past," the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other "helping" verbs. Examples of the "simple past" in the active voice: "He walked," "she ran," "they watched," "She taught," "they learned."

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

```
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"
```

you know that vēnī means "I came."

29.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you'll follow for forming inflected words is:

· find the correct stem
· apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

```
(1) veni -> ven-
```

Let's express "They arrived," a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

```
(2) ven + ērunt -> venērunt
```

Voilà! You've just expressed the English idea "They arrived." with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt.*

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus* - "to flee."

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fug**it**, "he, she fled"	fugē**runt**, "they fled"

29.8 The perfect passive

29.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence "As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands" is in the **active voice.** "Hercules" is the subject; the verb, "killed," is in the active voice, and "two serpents" is the direct object of the erb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. "Two serpents were killed by Hercules" is in the **passive voice.** The grammatical subject is "two serpents," but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they're receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what's important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco, necāre, necaui, necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit.*

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, "the serpents were killed"? Let's look at how to form the perfect passive.

29.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms.** They use a form the verb "to be" together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we'll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle.** This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence "the serpents were killed" uses a form of the form "to be" plus a participle, "killed," to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of "to be," however. You'll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb "to be" creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, "He was killed."

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We'll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let's note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

> (1) necatus -> necat-

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We'll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we'll use the ending *-i*.

> (2) necat- + -i -> necati

Our form of "to be" will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: "they (masculine) were killed." Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, "Mistakes were made.")

· use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:

– gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
– **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject

· memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

29.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional "helping" verbs: "she was going," "he started to go," "they used to go."

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying "he had one eye." In English, we can use the simple past tense "had" to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

```
unum oculum habebat.
```

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let's look at how it's formed.

29.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

> · stem: drop -re of second part
>
> · endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

· (1) start by dropping *-re* from the second part:

> habēre -> habē-

· (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

> habē- + -bat -> habebat

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because "he was not hindered by any darkness." Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, "to restrain, prevent" is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

```
inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus
```

(1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

inhibēre -> inhibē-

(2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

inhibē- + -batur -> inhibebatur

29.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that "thing" is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: "noun" comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means "name."

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the the verb, the recipient of the verb's action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may decribe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun's stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

29.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number.**

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders.** Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit's section on "Latin in Action.") There is no particular reason that the noun for "river", *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for "island", *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative**. In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

29.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviat *m, f* or *n*.

29.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries   The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is flumen; the genitive singular form is fluminis; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is insula; the genitive singular form is insulae; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cănis, cănis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically masculine *or* grammatically feminine.

29.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first, second and third declensions**. You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

29.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition "of," it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

29.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis. potentia* is a nominative noun, "power, strength;" *canis* is genitive singular, "dog." Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition "of" or with the possessive marker "'s," "the dog's strength," or "the strength of the dog."
- *Subjective genitive* or *objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis. amor, amoris* f. means "love, admiration". There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like "love of God." Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are intepreting the meaning of the phrase "of God" as the equivalent of the subject of a verb "to love." But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting "of God" as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like "they love God." In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus' love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog's love for Cephalus, but grammaticaly the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog's love.

Hyginus' story of Erechtheus' four daughters illutrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or "whole," when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive* or *genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus' daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum.* As we'll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning "them"; *una* is a nominative form meaning "one woman."

29.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

```
Theseus uenit
```

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei*, m," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject Theseus.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

```
Septem ductores ibant
```

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*,"to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

29.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

29.13.1 TBA: add tables of ending, and worked examples from vocab list

29.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

- · introduce adjectives as part of speech
- · introduce noun-adjective agreement
- · introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive

29.15 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

· introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
· introduce pronominal use
· introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
· introduce adjectival use

29.16 The personal agent of passive verbs

· introduce the **ablative** case
· forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

29.16.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

· pure ablative

29.17 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

29.17.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

> Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

29.17.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object.**

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb "to give." (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, "the case connected with giving.") In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as "to."

> "Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divien arrows." or "Hercules gave his divine arrows to him."

In both sentences "arrows" is the direct object of the verb "gave": the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is "him" (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition "to."

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

> Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

29.18 Prepositions

29.19 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb**. The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

29.19.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb.** An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running, raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. ("The girl ran.")
- Timent. ("They are frightened.")

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like "The girl ran three miles" has a direct object. However, "three miles" is the shortened form of "for three miles", an adverbial phrase that describes the word "ran." We'll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

29.19.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let's consider the verb *facere* ("to make" in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - "the farmer made", the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, "What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?"

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., "the farmer made pizza"). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can't do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case**. Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **fīliam** amāvit ("The father loved his daughter.")
- Fīliī **matrēs** amant. ("The sons love their mother.")
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. ("The wife was helping the farmer.")
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum** et **terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. ("The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.")

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence "the farmer gave the girl a pizza", the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word "girl" is an **indirect object**, the recipient of

the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as "to/for X". So in Latin "the farmer gave the girl a pizza" looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is "The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**."

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

29.19.3　Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive** verb. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. ("The girl was seen.")
- Virī captī sunt. ("The men were captured.")

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. ("The girl was seen by her mother.")
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. ("The men were captured by the women.")

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

- Pizza **puellae** data est. ("The pizza was given to the girl.")

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

- An ablative of agent
- Indirect object in the dative

29.19.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender.** The most common linking verb in English and Latin is "to be" (*sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

- Vir pater est. ("The man is a father.")
- Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. ("The boys are strong and brave.")

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir*, *puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater*, *magnī* [*et*] *fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

29.19.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb.** If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive**; if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking.** It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like "to carry") and or only intransitively (verbs like "to rain"), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

30 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

30.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

· Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
· Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
· Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
· Read more complex Latin sentences

31 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

31.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

32 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

32.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

33 Some less freqent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

33.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

- Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

34 Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

35 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

36 Reference

37 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
- 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
- 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
- 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
- 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear

---

37.1 Indicative - Active

37.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**ō**	mone**ō**	reg**ō**	capi**ō**	audi**ō**
2nd sg.	am**ās**	mon**ēs**	reg**is**	cap**is**	aud**īs**
3rd sg.	am**at**	mon**et**	reg**it**	cap**it**	aud**it**
1st pl.	am**āmus**	mon**ēmus**	reg**imus**	cap**imus**	aud**īmus**
2nd pl.	am**ātis**	mon**ētis**	reg**itis**	cap**itis**	aud**ītis**
3rd pl.	am**ant**	mon**ent**	reg**unt**	cap**iunt**	aud**iunt**

37.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2nd sg.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3rd sg.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

37.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābō	monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
3rd sg.	amābit	monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
1st pl.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

37.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	cēpī	audīvī
2nd sg.	amāvistī	monuistī	rexistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
3rd sg.	amāvit	monuit	rexit	cēpit	audīvit
1st pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	reximus	cēpimus	audīvimus
2nd pl.	amāvistis	monuistis	rexistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
3rd pl.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rexērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

37.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audīveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audīverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audīverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audīverant

37.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audīverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audīveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

37.2 Indicative - Passive

37.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

37.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

37.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

37.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	audītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	audītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	audītus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

37.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	audītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	audītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	audītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

37.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	audītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	audītus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	audītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

37.3 Subjunctive - Active

37.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās
3rd sg.	amet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
1st pl.	amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
2nd pl.	amētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
3rd pl.	ament	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

37.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

37.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

37.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuissem	rexissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

37.4 Subjunctive - Passive

37.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
3rd sg.	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2nd pl.	amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
3rd pl.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

37.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
2nd sg.	amārēris	monērē*ris**	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
3rd sg.	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2nd pl.	amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
3rd pl.	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

37.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	audītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

37.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	audītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

---

37.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audīre
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

37.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Gerundive	amandus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

---

38 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

Paradigm Verbs:

· 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
· 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
· 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
· 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
· 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of

---

38.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

38.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortor	vereor	loquor	morior	potior
2nd sg.	hortāris	verēris	loqueris	moreris	potīris
3rd sg.	hortātur	verētur	loquitur	moritur	potītur
1st pl.	hortāmur	verēmur	loquimur	morimur	potīmur
2nd pl.	hortāminī	verēminī	loquiminī	moriminī	potīminī
3rd pl.	hortantur	verentur	loquuntur	moriuntur	potiuntur

38.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortā**bar**	verē**bar**	loquē**bar**	moriē**bar**	potiē**bar**
2nd sg.	hortā**bāris**	verē**bāris**	loquē**bāris**	moriē**bāris**	potiē**bāris**
3rd sg.	hortā**bātur**	verē**bātur**	loquē**bātur**	moriē**bātur**	potiē**bātur**
1st pl.	hortā**bāmur**	verē**bāmur**	loquē**bāmur**	moriē**bāmur**	potiē**bāmur**
2nd pl.	hortā**bāminī**	verē**bāminī**	loquē**bāminī**	moriē**bāminī**	potiē**bāminī**
3rd pl.	hortā**bantur**	verē**bantur**	loquē**bantur**	moriē**bantur**	potiē**bantur**

38.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortā**bor**	verē**bor**	loqu**ar**	mori**ar**	poti**ar**
2nd sg.	hortā**beris**	verē**beris**	loqu**ēris**	mori**ēris**	poti**ēris**
3rd sg.	hortā**bitur**	verē**bitur**	loqu**ētur**	mori**ētur**	poti**ētur**
1st pl.	hortā**bimur**	verē**bimur**	loqu**ēmur**	mori**ēmur**	poti**ēmur**
2nd pl.	hortā**biminī**	verē**biminī**	loqu**ēminī**	mori**ēminī**	poti**ēminī**
3rd pl.	hortā**buntur**	verē**buntur**	loqu**entur**	mori**entur**	poti**entur**

38.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

38.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

38.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

38.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

38.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	horter	verear	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortēris	vereāris	loquāris	moriāris	potiāris
3rd sg.	hortētur	vereātur	loquātur	moriātur	potiātur
1st pl.	hortēmur	vereāmur	loquāmur	moriāmur	potiāmur
2nd pl.	hortēminī	vereāminī	loquāminī	moriāminī	potiāminī
3rd pl.	hortentur	vereantur	loquantur	moriantur	potiantur

38.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	morerer	potīrer

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārēris	verērēris	loquerēris	morerēris	potīrēris
3rd sg.	hortārētur	verērētur	loquerētur	morerētur	potīrētur
1st pl.	hortārēmur	verērēmur	loquerēmur	morerēmur	potīrēmur
2nd pl.	hortārēminī	verērēminī	loquerēminī	morerēminī	potīrēminī
3rd pl.	hortārentur	verērentur	loquerentur	morerentur	potīrentur

38.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sīs	veritus, -a, -um sīs	locutus, -a, -um sīs	mortuus, -a, -um sīs	potītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

38.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

38.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

38.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	horta**ndum**	vere**ndum**	loque**ndum**	morie**ndum**	potie**ndum**
Gerundive	horta**ndus, -a, -um**	vere**ndus, -a, -um**	loque**ndus, -a, -um**	morie**ndus, -a, -um**	potie**ndus, -a, -um**

39 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

39.1 First Declension

39.1.1 *puella, puellae,* f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puell**a**	puell**ae**
Genitive	puell**ae**	puell**ārum**
Dative	puell**ae**	puell**īs**
Accusative	puell**am**	puell**ās**
Ablative	puell**ā**	puell**īs**

39.2 Second Declension Masculine

39.2.1 *maritus, maritī,* m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	marit**us**	marit**ī**
Genitive	marit**ī**	marit**ōrum**

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**
Accusative	marit**um**	marit**ōs**
Ablative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**

39.2.2 *ager, agrī*, m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agr**ī**
Genitive	agr**ī**	agr**ōrum**
Dative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**
Accusative	agr**um**	agr**ōs**
Ablative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**

39.3 Second Declension Neuter

39.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī*, n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Genitive	exempl**ī**	exempl**ōrum**
Dative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**
Accusative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Ablative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**

39.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.4.1 *mater, matris*, f. - mother

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	māter*	mātrēs
Genitive	mātris	mātrum
Dative	mātrī	mātribus
Accusative	mātrem	mātrēs
Ablative	mātre	mātribus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

39.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

39.5.1 *urbs, urbis*, f. - city

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	urbs*	urbēs
Genitive	urbis	urbium**
Dative	urbī	urbibus
Accusative	urbem	urbēs
Ablative	urbe	urbibus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium*, rather than simply *-um*.

39.6 Third Declension Neuter

39.6.1 *nōmen, nōminis*, n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmin**a**
Genitive	nōmin**is**	nōmin**um**
Dative	nōmin**ī**	nōmin**ibus**
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmin**a****
Ablative	nōmin**e**	nōmin**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

39.7 Third Declension Neuter i-stem

39.7.1 *mare, maris*, n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	mar**ia*****
Genitive	mar**is**	mar**ium*****
Dative	mar**ī**	mar**ibus**
Accusative	mare**	mar**ia*****
Ablative	mar**ī*****	mar**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singlar ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

39.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.8.1 *manus, manūs,* f. - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	man**us**	man**ūs**
Genitive	man**ūs**	man**uum**
Dative	man**uī**	man**ibus**
Accusative	man**um**	man**ūs**
Ablative	man**ū**	man**ibus**

39.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

39.9.1 *genū, genūs,* n. - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Genitive	gen**ūs**	gen**uum**
Dative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**
Accusative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Ablative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**

39.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

39.10.1 *rēs, reī*, f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	rēs	rēs
Genitive	reī	rērum
Dative	reī	rēbus
Accusative	rem	rēs
Ablative	rē	rēbus

39.10.2 *diēs, diēī*, m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	diēs	diēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus

40 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

40.1 2-1-2 adjectives

40.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Genitive	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dative	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Accusative	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Ablative	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Genitive	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Accusative	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Ablative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

40.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchr**a**	pulchr**um**
Genitive	pulchr**ī**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ī**
Dative	pulchr**ō**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ō**
Accusative	pulchr**um**	pulchr**am**	pulchr**um**
Ablative	pulchr**ō**	pulchr**ā**	pulchr**ō**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchr**ī**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**a**
Genitive	pulchr**ōrum**	pulchr**ārum**	pulchr**ōrum**
Dative	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**
Accusative	pulchr**ōs**	pulchr**ās**	pulchr**a**
Ablative	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**

40.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

40.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	null**us***	null**a**	null**um****
Genitive	null**īus**	null**īus**	null**īus**
Dative	null**ī**	null**ī**	null**ī**

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	null**um**	null**am**	null**um**
Ablative	null**ō**	null**ā**	null**ō**

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter, altera, alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius, alia, aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	null**ī**	null**ae**	null**a**
Genitive	null**ōrum**	null**ārum**	null**ōrum**
Dative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**
Accusative	null**ōs**	null**ās**	null**a**
Ablative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**

40.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

40.3.1 *ācer, ācris, ācre* - **keen, sharp**

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācr**is**	ācr**e**
Genitive	ācr**is**	ācr**is**	ācr**is**
Dative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**
Accusative	ācr**em**	ācr**em**	ācr**e**
Ablative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

40.4 Two-Termination Adjectives

40.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**

40.5 One-Termination Adjectives

40.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapient**is**	sapient**is**
Dative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**
Accusative	sapient**em**	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Genitive	sapient**ium**	sapient**ium**
Dative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**
Accusative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Ablative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**

40.6 Interrogative

40.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

40.7 Declinable Numerals

40.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

40.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - **two**

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

40.7.3 *trēs, tria* - **three**

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

41 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus - to be
- eō, īre, īvī/iī, ītus - to go
- ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
- volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
- nōlō, nolle, noluī - not to want
- mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer

41.1 Indicative - Active

41.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

41.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ībam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ībās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ībat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ībātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ībant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

41.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ībō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ībis	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ībit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ībimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ībitis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ībunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

41.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	īvī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	īstī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	īstis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	īēre	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

41.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

41.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

41.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

41.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	feriminī
3rd	fertur	feruntur

41.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāminī
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

41.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēminī
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

41.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

41.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

41.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

41.3 Subjunctive - Active

41.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

41.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

41.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

41.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īssem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īsset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

---

41.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

41.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

41.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

41.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

41.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

41.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferrī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

41.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eundum	ferendum
Gerundive	eundus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

42 Pronouns - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

42.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

42.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

42.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

42.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

42.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ___, ___self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dative	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

42.3 Personal

42.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

42.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

42.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

42.4 Reflexive

42.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

42.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

42.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

42.5 Interrogative

42.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

42.6 Relative

42.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

43 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occuring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae*. You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

> These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocbulary entry for a form like iussit (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus.

44 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab *or* a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

45 Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifyiing pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

46 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· accipio, accipĕre, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
· adduco, adducĕre, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
· aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*) : *to say, assert*
· amitto, amittĕre, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
· amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
· appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
· audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
· cano, canĕre, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
· capio, capĕre, cepi, captus: *to seize*
· coepio, coepĕre, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
· cognosco, cognoscĕre, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
· commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
· comprimo, comprimĕre, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
· concumbo, concumbĕre, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
· conicio (*or* coicio, *or* conjicio), conjicĕre, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
· constituo,constituĕre, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
· consumo, consumĕre, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
· contendo, contendĕre, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
· converto, convertĕre, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
· cresco, crescĕre, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
· dedo, dedĕre, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
· defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
· dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictus: *to say*
· do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
· duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
· eo, ire, ii *or* ivi, -: *to go*
· exeo, exire, exivi *or* exii, exitus: *to go out*
· expono, exponĕre, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
· facio, facĕre, feci, factus: *to make*
· fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiĕri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponĕre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii *or* iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficĕre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungĕre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittĕre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to war*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nisus *or* nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish..not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio *or* objicio, obicĕre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidĕre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendĕre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parĕre, peperi, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutĕre, percussi, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducĕre, perduxi, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereo, perire, perivi *or* perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petĕre, petivi *or* petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponĕre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficĕre, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugĕre, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerĕre, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapĕre, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipĕre, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi *or* redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli *or* retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondēre, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi *or* sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solēre, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollĕre, sustuli, sublatus: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradĕre, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni ventus: *to come*
- video, vidēre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivĕre, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

47 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, beneficii *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympha, nymphae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- procus, proci *m*: *suitor*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagitta *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f*: *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f*: *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f*: *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f*: *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f*: *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f*: *wish, will*

48 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- alius, alia, aliud: *another*
- alter, altera, alterum: *other* (*of two*)
- ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other, the remainder*
- duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
- idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
- inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
- liber, libera, liberum: *free*
- magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
- mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
- multus, multa, multum: *much* (*sg.*), *many* (*pl.*)
- omnis, omnis: *each* (*sg.*), *all* (*pl.*)
- primus, prima, primum: *first*
- regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
- sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
- septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
- socius, socia, socium: *allied*
- suus, sua, suum: **reflexive possessive adjective, *his own, her own*
- tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
- unus, una, unum: *a single*

49 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· ibi: *there*
· inde: *from there*
· ita: *so*
· item: *likewise, also*
· non: *not*
· postea: *later*
· tunc: *then*

50 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· atque *or* ac: and, and besides, and even
· autem: however, nonetheless
· cum: when
· dum: while
· et: and
· itaque: and so, accordingly
· nam: for
· neque *or* nec: not, and not, also not
· ne: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
· postquam: after
· quia: since
· quod: because
· quoniam: since
· sed: but
· sive: or
· si: if
· ubi: where, when
· unde: from where
· ut: *conjunction introducting several kinds of subordinate clauses* date: September 9, 2022 —

51 *Lingua Latina Legenda*: an open-source introduction to Latin

This open-source textbook is one part of a project to develop a new two-semester introduction to Latin at the College of the Holy Cross. Our curriculum is based on these principles:

- the course emphasizes authentic examples of language, and is organized around a target text (in this textbook, the *Fabulae* of Hyginus). Instead of composing made-up Latin, we draw on the target text as much as possible.
- we follow modern principles of language pedagogy in presenting first those features of language (syntactic, morphological, lexical) that are frequent in Latin, are inherently complex, and are most different from English forms of expression and thought.
- we determine the sequence of the textbook's topics based on computational analysis of the features needed to read unaltered passages of Hyginus.
- throughout the curriculum, we link the study of Latin to reflection on contemporary issues.

Our work at Holy Cross is taking place through the college's Scholarship in Action program, and we gratefully acknowledge its support.

52 About this textbook

The current on-line version of this textbook is simultaneously being drafted and used in Latin 101 at the College of the Holy Cross in 2022-2023.

We expect to complete the first half of the textbook through chapter 5, "Subordination," in one college semester. Chapters are not intended to take equal amounts of time. Chapter 3, "Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns,and adjectives" requires approximately 6 weeks, and Chapter 5, "Subordination," about a month; the intervening Chapter 4, "Richer sentences," covers much less new material, and provides an opportunity to apply and reinforce the fundamental material from Chapter 3. At Holy Cross, this chapter falls around the time of our fall break, so is also a useful moment to regroup and refresh material covered in the first half of the semester.

You can download a dated PDF of the current draft from https://github.com/LinguaLatina/textbook/raw/master/pdf/l3.pdf.

The draft of this material that was used in 2021-2022 is included in the textbook website at https://lingualatina.github.io/textbook/2021-2022/.

53 Preliminaries

53.1 Alphabet and pronounciation

Latin is a historical language. Although it has never been lost, and has been used continuously for thousands of years, it has survived as a language we must learn as a second language: for many centuries, there have been no native speakers of Latin. In different parts of the world today, scholars use different conventions for pronouncing Latin. Italians pronounce Latin like Italian, Germans pronounce Latin like German, and the British pronounciation of Latin is hard even to describe.

Americans generally adopt a pronounciation (presented here) that reflects our knowledge of how individual letters and combinations of letter were pronounced, but we should not imagine that we can accurately reproduce the accent of a speaker of classical Latin.

53.2 The classical Latin alphabet: a quick guide

Our alphabet derives directly from the classical Latin alphabet, and has the same letters in the same order, except that classical Latin did not have J, V or W. Instead the letters I and U were used to write both pure vowel sounds and a semi-vowel or consonant. In addition, in the classical period, K, Y and Z were used only to spell words borrowed from Greek.

53.2.1 Consonant sounds

Consonants were mostly pronounced as in modern English, with the following notes:

- C and G are always "hard" (like "cut" and "go", never like "cease" or "gyrate").
- S is always unvoiced (like "cease"), never a z-sound (like "ease")
- when I spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "y"
- when U spelled a consonant sound, it was pronounced like English "w"
- the double consonant PH came to be pronounced like F

53.2.2 Vowels

The five vowels a, e, i, o and u have "pure" sounds, without any glide, any approximately:

Vowel	English example of sound	Latin word to practice
A	aha	*mater*, "mother"
E	deck	*terra*, "earth"
I	see	*hic*, "he, this person"
O	no	*homo*, "person, human being"
U	do	*factum*, "deed, accomplishment"

Vowels could be long or short; as in a modern language like German, the long version of the vowel was literally held for a longer time than the short version.

Two vowels together could be pronounced as a single *diphthong*: these originally sounded like the two vowels pronounced successively but blending the first into the second.

Try pronouncing the following diphthongs in these Latin words, taken from Hyginus *Fabulae*:

Diphthong	Latin word
ae	*quaero*, "I seek"
au	*autem*, "however"
ei	*Deianira*, a wife of Hercules
eu	*Theseus*, an Athenian hero
oe	*poena*, "penalty, punishment"
ui	*fluit*, "it flows"

53.2.3 Orthography

Like the inscriptions and papyri surviving from the classical period, many Latin manuscripts and printed editions of Latin texts use only I and U. Others use I for both vocalic and consonantal sounds, but distinguish U and V. Still others use I, J, U and V. Long and short vowels were not distinguished in writing.

In this text book, when we introduce forms and new vocabulary, we will sometimes include long and short marks on vowels, but when we cite passages of Hyginus, we will normally write vowels without quantity mark,

and will use only I and U (not J and V) .

53.3 Syllables and accent

53.3.1 Syllables and their quantity

Latin words have as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs: *Her-cu-les poe-na*, *quae-ro*.

A syllable is **long** if:

1. it has a long vowel or a diphthong, (e.g., the first syllable of *Rō-ma* is long)
2. *or* a short vowel is followed by a cluster of two consonants, (e.g, the first syllable of *Her-cu-les* is long because the *e* is followed by two consonants, *rc*)
3. *except* that the cluster is **short** if the cluster is *l* or *r* following one of : *b, d, g, p, t, c,* or the combination *ph* (e.g., the first syllable of *pă-tris* is short because the cluster after a short vowel is *t* followed by *r*).

Other syllables with short vowels are **short** (e.g., the second syllable of *Her-cŭ-les* is short).

53.3.2 Accent

Every Latin word with more than one syllable had a stress accent on either the next to last syllable (sometimes called the **penult**), or the one before it (the **antepenult**). The placement of the accent depends on whether the next to last syllable is long or short. If the penult is long, then it is accented; otherwise, the syllable before it is accented. Examples:

· *a-mī-cus*, "friend," has a long penult: pronounce it *amícus*.
· *Her-cŭ-les* has a short penult: pronounce it *Hércules*

If a word has only two syllables, the penult is accented no matter what:

· pronounce *căp-ŭt*, "head" as *cáput*.

54 Inflection of verbs, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives

In Unit 1, we will look at how inflection works in the Latin language. We begin by with the concept of an inflected language and detailing how Latin's use of inflection differs from English' use of it. The key takeaway here will be that while English primarily relies on word order to convey grammatical function, Latin uses word endings to do so.

We will then move to examine the various different substantives – noun, pronoun, and adjective – and how they are inflected in Latin. In spite of their different usages, all these substantive forms have three characteristics – case, number, and grammatical gender – and these characteristics signal the substantive's role in a sentence. Consequently, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate substantives and substantive phrases based on these characteristics. To accomplish this task, we will become familiar with the way that dictionary entries for substantives work and especially how these entries help us to understand the rules for the inflection of the particular substantive, something that is often referred to as a noun's declension.

We will build on our discussion of substantive inflection by looking at verbal inflection. We will learn about the five characteristics of verbs – person, number, tense, voice, and mood – and how these characteristics create meaning in a Latin sentence. As we did with substantives, we will learn how to recognize, form, analyze, and translate verbs based on these characteristics. Once again, we will spend time learning about dictionary entries for verbs and how the information contained therein can help us to better understand a specific verbal form. We will also learn some of the rules for verbal inflection, i.e. conjugation.

The last part of this unit will look at how Latin puts together these inflected forms at the sentence level. We will learn about different types of sentence structures found in Latin, the particular collocations of verbal and substantive forms that they use, and the way that we translate these forms.

54.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic principles of inflection in the Latin language as well as how it differs from English
- Articulate the different features of substantives (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) and the information that these features provide

- Recognize and produce substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Articulate the different features of verbal forms and the information that they provide
- Recognize and produce some basic verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
- Explain how different grammatical features of language shape the way we understand the world around us

54.2 Latin: an inflected language

54.2.1 Inflection

One of the most striking differences between Latin and English is how Latin changes the form of words to indicate their function in a sentence, where English uses word order. We call this systematic change in forms **inflection**.

English has only limited grammatical inflection today, but most English nouns have different forms indicating whether they are singular or plural: "dog" means only one, but "dogs" means more than one. Adding an -s to a noun is a regular pattern in English. We could say that -s is the regular inflectional ending to indicate the grammatical property of *number* for a noun.

> **Aside:** English is related to Latin as part of the larger IndoEuropean family of languages, and in earlier phases of its history had a much fuller system of inflection, comparable to Latin.

In the present tense, English verbs in the *third person singular* (he, she, it) also change form to indicate number: "she says" but "they say." We use singular verb forms only with singular subjects, and plural verb forms with plural subjects: "The dogs run," but "The dog runs."

Some English nouns change their form in less predictable ways: "mouse" is a singular noun, and "mice" is plural. Native speakers learn this without thinking about it; people who learn English as a second language have to memorize this as an exception to the regular pattern of adding -s to form plurals.

A few English nouns do not change their form to indicate number. "Moose" could refer to one or more of the largest mammal in the deer family. (And "deer" poses the same problem: one or more?) A native speaker of English can say, "The moose walks," and "The moose walk." The verb makes it clear that in the first sentence, "moose" is singular, but plural in the the second sentence.

54.2.2 Function and form

Like English, Latin uses inflection to show the number of nouns and verbs, but Latin's system of inflection far more extensive than English.

English, for example, follows a strict word order to indicate subject, verb and direct object of a sentence. "Dog bites man" is an everyday sentence: the subject is "Dog," and the direct object is "man." "Man bites dog" is a headline: the man is now doing the biting, and dog is the recipient of the action.

Latin most frequently (but not always) places the verb at the end of a sentence. You could equally comfortably have a three-word sentence in the order Object-Subject-Verb, or Subject-Object-Verb, because the inflected form of the subject and the object will show clearly what role each word plays.

> **Aside** You will probably never find the order English requires: Subject-Verb-Object! When we read Latin, and we practice our skills with Latin composition, we'll want to consider what nuance or emphasis is expressed through different choices of Latin's more flexible word order.

See the following introduction to inflection from Dominic Machado for Latin examples drawn from Hyginus' *Fabulae* of how Latin inflection can work>

54.3 Verbal units

When people listen to their native language, we don't simply hear a stream of sound: we intuitively cluster meaningful units together. When we learn to read, we similarly learn how to recognize clusters of letters and words, to "chunk" the text into meaningful units.

As you learn how to read Latin, we will emphasize this crucial skill. Rather than simply analyzing one word at a time reading left to right, you will learn how to see sentences and whole paragraphs as compositions of smaller pieces, each with a recognizable structure and meaning.

We will use the term **verbal unit** to refer to the most important underlying structure in Greek. A **verb** is a word that expresses an action or a state of being. (As [Schoolhouse Rock put it decades ago, "Verb: that's what happening](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IrfZCvTe-Ko).") A verbal unit combines some form of a verb with a subject to express a complete idea.

Compared to English, Latin has an rich system of verb forms to create different kinds of verbal units. We will see, forexample, how Latin can use participles to form verbal units quite different from anything in English.

The most important verbal unit in Latin, however, is the **finite verb**. Every sentence has at least one verbal unit expressed with a finite verb plus a subject, even if these are only implied. Subjects and verbs can be implied in English, too: if someone asks you "Coffee or tea?" they are implying "Would you like coffee or tea?" a sentence with a subject ("you") and verb ("would like").

We have borrowed our own word "verb" from Latin grammarians. They referred to verbs with the term *verbum*, an everyday word that could mean a "sentence," "expression," or evern "conversation." *verbum* is a complete idea. Even if you leave out every other word of a sentence, the finite verb constitutes a complete statement.

54.4 Finite verbs

Finite verb forms have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice.** To properly identify a finite verb form, you must identify all five properties. Latin finite verb forms contain all of this information in the verb form itself. In English, we often need other words to convey some of this information, such as subject pronouns to convey the person and number, and auxiliary (or "helping") verbs to express tense, mood, and voice.

54.4.1 Person

A verb's person expresses the subject of the verb in relation to the "speaker" of the sentence.

1. The first person (*I* or *we* in English) subject includes the speaker.
2. The second person (*you* in English) subject is the addressee(s) of the speaker.
3. The third person (*he, she, it, they* in English) subject is a person or thing separate from the speaker and addressee.

54.4.2 Number

Number combines with person in describing the subject of verb. It indicates when the subject is **singular** or **plural.** In English, for example, the first person singular is *I* while first person plural is *we*.

54.4.3 Tense

The **tense** of a finite verb describes the time of the action. Latin has six tenses: three of them refer to present or future time, name the **present**, **future**, and **future perfect** tenses. Three other tenses refer to past time: the **imperfect**, **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses.

54.4.4 Mood

The mood of a verb indicates the function of the expression and the nature of the action in the speaker's conception. "Mood" and "mode" come from the same root in English: the "mood" of a verb is the "mode" in which the verb is operating.

Latin has moods:

1. the **indicative**, used to express a statement or question of a factual nature (in the eyes of the speaker) in the past, present, or future.
2. the **imperative**, used to give a command

3. the **subjunctive** mood has many uses in subordinate clauses, and is also used to express potential or possible action.

54.4.5 Voice

Voice expresses the relationship between the action of the verb and the subject. Like English, Latin has two voices: **active**, in which the subject is performing the action of the verb ("I love"), and **passive**, in which the subject is receiving the action of the verb ("I am loved").

54.5 Principal parts of verbs

All verb forms in these many combinations of person, number, tense, mood and voice (as well as forms we will learn later, such as infinitives and participles), are formed using the verb's **principal parts**.

English verbs have a system of principal parts, too, although native speakers may not think about them that way. In English, the principal parts can include the present tense, the past tense, and the past participle: for example, play, played, played; swim, swam, swum; go, went, gone; do, did, done.

Latin verbs have four principal parts (although for some verbs not all parts may exist). In a glossary or a lexicon, Latin verbs are listed according to the first principal part, and so if you are looking a verb up you will need to be able to move from a verb form made from any principal part to its first principal part in order to find it in the lexicon.

54.6 Forms of prinicipal parts

Two of the principal parts, the first and third, are finite verbs in a first person singular form ("I") of the indicative mood. We'll use them to find the stems we can modify with endings to create finite verb forms. The other two are forms of the verb we'll learn to use in following chapters.

1. The **first principal part** is the first person singular in the *present* active indicative (or the present passive indicative if active forms do not exist). Drop the
2. The **second principal** is an *infinitive*. (We'll begin learning about uses of the infinitive in units 2 and 3.) You'll look at the second principal part to find what set of endings to use with a stem.
3. The **third principal part** is the first person singular in the *perfect* active indicative. If the verb has no active forms, it has no third principal part.
4. The **fourth principal part** is a *participle*. We'll learn in this unit how to use it create perfect passive forms.

54.6.1 Verb conjugations

Latin verbs are organized into four **conjugations**, a grouping where they share common endings. To find what conjugation a verb belongs to, look at the second principal part. In regular verbs, it will have one of four possible endings corresponding to the four conjugations.

- āre : first conjugation
- ēre : second conjugation
- ĕre: third conjugation
- īre: fourth conjugation

54.6.2 Examples of principal parts

Principal parts are listed in order, 1-4. Memorize these the principal parts of these twelve common verbs that you will see repeatedly in reading Hyginus.

- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus - to love
- audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus - to hear
- capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus - to take, seize
- dō, dāre, dedī, datus - to give
- dūcō, dūcĕre, dūxī, ductus - to lead
- faciō, facĕre, fēcī, factus - to make, do
- fugiō, fugĕre, fūgī, fugitus - to flee
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus - to have
- interficiō, interficĕre, interfēcī, interfectus - to kill
- mittō, mittĕre, mīsī, missus - to send
- veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus - to come
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, visus - to see;

54.6.3 Looking for patterns

As you learn principal parts, you should practice noticing patterns and then using those patterns to help you recognize, retrieve, use, and even take an educated guess at, a principal part.

Two good examples from your unit 1 vocabulary list are amō and audiō. Regular nouns of the first conjugation will change in exactly the same ways as amō. Drop the *-āre* ending from the second principal part, and you can reliably produce the others by add *-ō* to create the first part, *-āvī* to create the third part and *-ātus* for the fourth part.

Similarly, for regular verbs of the fourth conjugation, drop the *-īre* ending from the second part, and add *-iō* for the first part, *-īvī* for the second part, and *-ītus* for the fourth part.

54.7 The perfect active tense

The form of a finite verb in Latin expresses the subject as well as the verb: it is a complete verbal unit by itself. Example: the form *venit* means "he came, arrived" or "she came, arrived"; the form *venērunt* means "they came, arrived." These are already complete sentences that do not need a separate word for "he," "she" or "they."

54.7.1 The indicative mood and narrating events in the past

As already described above, finite verbs have five properties: person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The **indicative** is one of the three moods of the Latin verb. It is the mode of verb used for narrating factual events, and for that reason is frequently seen in most texts.

Latin has more than one tense for narrating events in the past, but they differ in **aspect** — that is, how to think of or picture the action the verb is representing.

- the **perfect tense** expresses an action as single and simple, without indication of its completion or continuation
- the **imperfect tense** expresses an action as continuous, started, ongoing, habitual or in any way incomplete

The choice of verb tense, then, involves not only an indication that the events happened in the past, but other information about the event. Do you want to emphasize it as a single incident? Choose the perfect indicative if so. Or do you want to indicate that it happened over a length of time, was repeated or habitual, perhaps was started but not completed? The imperfect indicative will give you the means to add those shades of meaning.

54.7.2 Meaning of the perfect indicative

The perfect indicative represents the action as *single, simple, distinct,* the equivalent of a snapshot of the action. The tense that is the closest to this idea in English is the "simple past," the past tense formed in the active voice by adding *-ed* to the verb stem, or made by changes to the stem, with no other "helping" verbs. Examples of the "simple past" in the active voice: "He walked," "she ran," "they watched," "She taught," "they learned."

To understand a verb form, you must take into account all five properties: person, number, tense, mood and voice. In the active voice, the subject performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action.

To form finite verbs in the perfect tense and active voice, you will use the *third* principal part. Remember that this part is already an indicative form of the perfect active, namely the first person singular. When you see a vocabulary listing like this:

```
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, "to come"
```

you know that vēnī means "I came."

54.7.3 Forming and analyzing the perfect active

The general pattern you'll follow for forming inflected words is:

- find the correct stem
- apply the correct ending

The *stem* dictates what possible tenses and voices can be formed; the *ending* identifies the person, number and mood.

The third principal part is used for all forms of the perfect active. To find its stem, drop the final *-i*. For *venio*, then:

```
(1) veni -> ven-
```

Let's express "They arrived," a complete sentence in the indicative mood. We to add the ending that expresses the third plural of the indicative, which is *-ērunt*

```
(2) ven + ērunt -> venērunt
```

Voilà! You've just expressed the English idea "They arrived." with the complete Latin sentence *venērunt.*

To analyze a Latin verb form, you can mentally reverse the process: if you isolate what ending is used with what stem, you can identify the form. When you see *venērunt* in a text, you can tell yourself that since *-ērunt* is the third plural.

All four conjugations work exactly the same way and use exactly the same endings for the perfect active indicative. Memorize this pair of endings:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	-it	ērunt

Here is a complete example with translation using the verb *fugiō, fugěre, fūgī, fugitus* - "to flee."

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	fug**it**, "he, she fled"	fug**ērunt**, "they fled"

54.8 The perfect passive

54.8.1 Meaning of the perfect passive

In the passive voice, the subject of the verb is not the person or thing performing the action, but the one receiving it. The sentence "As a baby, Hercules killed two serpents with his hands" is in the **active voice.** "Hercules" is the subject; the verb, "killed," is in the active voice, and "two serpents" is the direct object of the erb. In the active voice, the direct object is what receives the action.

But we could turn this around. "Two serpents were killed by Hercules" is in the **passive voice.** The grammatical subject is "two serpents," but the serpents are not performing the action of killing: they're receiving it. The two sentences mean approximately the same thing (although they put a slightly different emphasis on what's important about the statement).

For both sentences, Latin will use a perfect tense, since the action of killing the serpents was a single, completed, one-time act. Hyginus uses the verb *neco*, a regular first-conjugation verb (so its principal parts are *neco, necāre, necaui, necatus*). If we want to tell the story in the active voice, Hercules will be the subject, so we would use the third person singular form, *necauit.*

But what if we wanted to turn it around, to make the serpents the subject of a passive verb, "the serpents were killed"? Let's look at how to form the perfect passive.

54.8.2 Formation of the perfect passive

In the perfect tense, the passive voice forms are **compound forms.** They use a form the verb "to be" together with a form of the fourth principal part, which (as we'll learn in detail in unit 4) is a **participle.** This is actually quite similar to the way English forms the past tense in the passive: the sentence "the serpents were killed" uses a form of the form "to be" plus a participle, "killed," to express a passive voice action in the past. Latin uses present tense forms of "to be," however. You'll need to memorize these two forms:

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	est	sunt

The fourth principal part of *neco* is *necatus*, and used together with the verb "to be" creates a perfect passive form: *necatus est* means, "He was killed."

The participle changes form its depending on the subject of the sentence, by applying different endings to the stem of the fourth part. We'll learn more about grammatical gender later in this chapter, but for now, let's note that the distinct forms of the fourth principal part will tell us the **gender** of the subject, and will match the **number** of the verb.

To find the stem of the fourth part, drop *-us*.

(1) necatus -> necat-

Then apply one of these endings:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	-us	-i
Feminine	-a	-ae
Neuter	-um	-a

We'll consider the serpents to be masculine, and we know we have more than one of them, so we'll use the ending *-i*.

(2) necat- + -i -> necati

Our form of "to be" will also be plural, to match the number of serpents, so our final statement will be *necati sunt*.

This is actually a complete sentence in Latin: "they (masculine) were killed." Notice that it is possible to make a statement in the passive voice without indicating who did the action. This use of the passive is much beloved by people who want to avoid taking responsibility. (Consider an English sentence like, "Mistakes were made.")

· use 4th principal part, adjective. Will look more at adjectives in this chapter, but note:

– gender, number in a subject form (nominative case)
– **agreement** among 4th part, *sum* and expressed or implied subject

· memorize endings:

Examples from Hyginus

54.9 The imperfect indicative

The imperfect indicative is another way of narrating factual events in the past. As we have seen, the perfect views an action as a single action completed in the past. The imperfect, by contrast, expresses an action that is incomplete, repeated, continuous or ongoing, habitual, or in some other way *not* viewed as single and complete. To express similar ideas, English uses additional "helping" verbs: "she was going," "he started to go," "they used to go."

For example, Hyginus describes the Cyclops by saying "he had one eye." In English, we can use the simple past tense "had" to express this, but Latin makes clear that this was not a single, one-time action. It was almost a state of being: the Cyclops *always* had one eye, so Hyginus uses the imperfect in the phrase

```
unum oculum habebat.
```

habebat is the third singular of the imperfect indicative active. Let's look at how it's formed.

54.9.1 Formation of the imperfect tense

You form both the active and passive voice of the imperfect tense from the *second* principal part. As with the perfect active, you find the stem, and add the appropriate ending for the person, number and voice that you want.

> · stem: drop -re of second part
>
> · endings same for all conjugations.

The complete process to form the imperfect tense then looks like:

· (1) start by dropping *-re* from the second part:

> habēre -> habē-

· (2) Add the appropriate ending. For this chapter, you should memorize the third person* endings for singular and plural (listed here).

> habē- + -bat -> habebat

Person and Number	Active ending	Passive ending
third singular	-bat	-batur
third plural	-bant	-bantur

The passive voice works in exactly the same way. Hyginus tells us that one of the Argonauts was Lynceus, who had a kind of night vision superpower: he could see in the dark because "he was not hindered by any darkness." Hyginus uses the verb *inhibebatur* in the imperfect to express the continuous, repeated event: Lynceus was *never* bothered by darkness. The verb *inhibeo*, "to restrain, prevent" is a compound of *habeo* with the following principal parts:

```
inhibeo, inhibēre, inhibui, inhibitus
```

(1) Find the stem by dropping *-re* from the second principal part:

inhibēre -> inhibē-

(2) Add the right ending. Here, we want the third singular ending for the passive voice:

inhibē- + -batur -> inhibebatur

54.10 Nouns

A **noun** names a person, animal, place, or thing (whether that "thing" is concrete or abstract). Our term again comes from Latin grammarians: "noun" comes from Latin *nomen*, which generically just means "name."

In a clause or sentence, nouns can fulfill various functions. A noun might be the subject of the verb: the person, place, or thing doing the action the verb represents. A noun might be the object of the the verb, the recipient of the verb's action, or the indirect (or secondary) object of that action. A noun might further describe another noun, or be paired with a preposition to act adjectivally or adverbially. It may decribe the means by which the action of the verb happens. Or it might name the addressee of the sentence.

In Latin, the function of the noun is represented by its **case**, and the case is indicated by the ending attached to the noun's stem. We have already seen that endings provide a great deal of information in a verb form, and the same is true for nouns. Identifying the case of a noun is key to understanding how it is functioning in that particular sentence.

54.10.1 Overview of nouns

All Latin nouns have three properties: **gender**, **case**, and **number.**

Every noun belongs to one of three grammatical **genders.** Although the grammatical genders are named **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**, these are arbitrary linguistic categories, not biological gender. (You can learn more how ancient Latin grammarians thought about biological and grammatical gender in this unit's section on "Latin in Action.") There is no particular reason that the noun for "river", *flumen*, is neuter, but the noun for "island", *insula*, is feminine.

Case indicates the function of a noun in a sentence. Cases are expressed and identified by endings. There are six cases: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative**, **ablative** and **vocative**. In this module we will look at some of the most important functions indicated by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative and ablative cases.

Noun forms have the same two **numbers** as verb forms: singular, and plural.

54.10.1.1 Dictionary entry of nouns

The dictionary entry of a noun concisely encodes all the information you need to know in order to produce or recognize all of its cases and numbers. The first part tells you its nominative singular form, the second part is its genitive singular form, and the third crucial detail is its gender(s), usually abbreviat *m, f* or *n*.

54.10.1.1.1 Examples of dictionary entries   The following vocabulary entries are included in the required vocabulary list for this module. Let's unpack their information more fully:

- *flumen, fluminis* n., "river"
- *insula, insulae* f., "island"

The first noun has the meaning "river." Its nominative singular form is flumen; the genitive singular form is fluminis; all of its forms are neuter.

The second noun has the meaning "island." Its nominative singular form is insula; the genitive singular form is insulae; all of its forms are feminine.

You'll also see this entry:

- *cănis, cănis* m. or f., "dog"

The listing "m. or f." means that the noun can be *either* grammatically mascuine *or* grammatically feminine.

54.10.1.2 Declension

We use the term **declension** to refer to a group of nouns that share the same set of endings. In the first half of this course, we will focus on three frequent declensions of nouns that make up the overwhelming majority of noun forms you will see in reading Latin. Scholars of Latin creatively refer to as the **first, second and third declensions**. You can recognize the declension of a noun by looking at the ending of its genitive singular:

- *-ae*: first declension
- *-i*: second declension
- *-is*: third declension

54.11 The genitive case

The **genitive case** is used to relate one noun to another. (In fact, this is a characteristic feature of *all* the languages in the Indo-European family that includes Latin.) While you may often find that nouns in the genitive case are translated with the English preposition "of," it is important to understand the range of underlying ideas expressed by the genitive in Latin.

54.11.1 Some general uses of the genitive

The complicated story of Procris and her husband Cephalus illustrates some common uses of the genitive case.

- *Possession*: Diana gave to Procris a hunting dog, and Hyginus refers to the *potentia canis*. *potentia* is a nominative noun, "power, strength;" *canis* is genitive singular, "dog." Here, the genitive expresses *possession*: the dog possessed strength or power. In these instances, we might translate the genitive into English with the preposition "of" or with the possessive marker "'s," "the dog's strength," or "the strength of the dog."
- *Subjective genitive* or *objective genitive*: Cephalus admired the dog greatly, and Hyginus refers to the *amor canis*. *amor, amoris* f. means "love, admiration". There is always an ambiguity when the noun expressing a verbal idea is modified by a second noun in the genitive case, just as there is in an English phrase like "love of God." Does that mean that God loves someone? If so, we would say it is a **subjective genitive**, since we are intepreting the meaning of the phrase "of God" as the equivalent of the subject of a verb "to love." But it could equally mean the love that someone feels for God. We would call that an **objective genitive**, since we are interpreting "of God" as the equivalent of a direct object in a phrase like "they love God." In this passage of Hyginus, the context makes it clear that he is referring to Cephalus' love for or admiration of the hunting dog, not the dog's love for Cephalus, but grammaticaly the *amor canis* is identical to what a pet owner could say to refer to their faithful dog's love.

Hyginus' story of Erechtheus' four daughters illutrates another common use of the genitive to refer to a group or "whole," when the noun it modifies names part of the whole or one among the group.

- *Partitive genitive* or *genitive of the whole*: Erechtheus' daughters took an oath that if *one of them* died, the others would commit suicide. Hyginus expresses this with the phrase *una eārum*. As we'll see in this chapter, *eārum* is the feminine genitive plural form of a pronoun meaning "them"; *una* is a nominative form meaning "one woman."

54.12 The nominative case

The **nominative case** is a naming case. Its most frequent function is to indicate the **subject** of a finite verb.

The subject of a verb will match the person and number of the verb form: a *singular* noun in the nominative case will have a third person *singular* verb form, and a nominative *plural* noun acting as the subject will match a third person *plural* verb. We use the term **agreement** to refer to this matching of grammatical properties.

Consider these examples. In his account of Theseus' adventures, Hyginus says that Theseus came to Crete:

```
Theseus uenit
```

The dictionary form for Theseus' name in Latin is "*Theseus, Thesei*, m," so *Theseus* is nominative, singular, and masculine. *uenit*, "he came," is perfect, active and indicative; since it is in the third person singular, it *agrees* with the subject Theseus.

In the story of the seven heroes who fought against Thebes, Hyginus says, "The seven leaders were going there" (in order to fight),

```
Septem ductores ibant
```

ductor, ductōris, m., means "leader, commander. The form *ductores* is masculine, nominative and plural. (We'll see the plural forms of the nominative case below.) *ibant* is in from the irregular verb *eō*,"to go." It is imperfect indicative active. Even in the irregular form, you can recognize that the ending is third person plural, so it agrees with the plural subject *ductores*.

54.13 Nouns in the nominative and genitive

Creating noun forms is similar to creating finite verb forms: (1) you find the stem from the dictionary entry, and (2) add the proper ending. For finite verbs, you had to choose the appropriate principal part of the verb to find its stem. For nouns, you use the genitive singular form (the second word in a dictionary entry), and drop the genitive ending.

s

54.13.1 Endings for the nominative and genitive cases

54.13.1.1 First declension

Nouns using first declension endings can be masculine or feminine: you have to memorize the gender when you learn a vocabulary item.

Note that the genitive singular and the nominative plural of first-declension nouns have the same ending!

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-arum

Example: *femina, feminae* f, "woman"

You can recognize from the genitive singular form that *femina* is a first-declension noun. Drop the *ae* ending from the genitive singular to find the stem *femin*, and add the appropriate endings for case and number.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	femin**a**	femin**ae**
Genitive	femin**ae**	femin**arum**

54.13.1.2 Second declension

Second declension nouns can be masculine or neuter. For *masculine* nouns of the second declension, the genitive singular and the nominative plural of first-declension nouns have the same ending – the same ambiguity as the first declension!

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-us *or* -	-i
Genitive	-i	-orum

Compare the forms for these two masculine nouns:

· *filius, filii* m: "son"
· *liber, liberi* m: "child"

You can see from the first form that *filius* has an ending in *-us*. Note that when we drop the *-i* from the genitive singular, the stem is *fili*.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	fili**us**	fili**i**

Case	Singular	Plural
Genitive	fil**i**	fili**orum**

liber has no ending added to its stem in the nominative singular: the nominative singular form is identical to the stem we find from dropping the genitive singular ending.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	liber	liber**i**
Genitive	liber**i**	liber**orum**

Neuter nouns differ from masculine nouns of the second declension in the nominative case. You can always distinguish the nominative and genitive of neuter nouns.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-um	-a
Genitive	-i	-orum

oppidum, oppidi n: "town"

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	oppid**um**	oppid**a**
Genitive	oppid**i**	oppid**orum**

54.13.1.3 Third declension

Third declension nouns can be masculine, feminine or neuter. The form of the nominative singular can look quite different from the genitive singular, but to create all the other forms, you follow the regular process of adding the correct endings to the stem you find from the genitive singular (for the third declension, by dropping *-is*).

> Note that the genitive plural ending resembles the nominative singular ending of second declension neuter nouns like *oppidum*!

Masculine and feminine nouns normally use this set of endings:

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	(varies)	-es
Genitive	-is	-um

canis, canis m *or* f: "dog"

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	canis	can**es**
Genitive	can**is**	can**um**

A few third declension nouns called "i-stems" have a genitive plural in *-ium*.

auis, auis f: "bird"

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	auis	au**es**
Genitive	au**is**	au**ium**

Neuter nouns have the same nominative plural ending as second-declension neuters.

caput, capitis n: "head"

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	caput	caput**a**
Genitive	caput**is**	caput**um**

54.14 Adjectives in the nominative and genitive

- · introduce adjectives as part of speech
- · introduce noun-adjective agreement
- · introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive

54.15 Demonstrative pronouns in the nominative and genitive

- · introduce demonstratives as example or pronouns (new part of speech)
- · introduce pronominal use
- · introduce formation of adjectives, and forms of the nominative and genitive
- · introduce adjectival use

54.16 The personal agent of passive verbs

- · introduce the **ablative** case
- · forms in 3 declensions of nouns, in adjectives, and in the demonstrative

54.16.1 Means or instrument with active and passive verbs

- · pure ablative

54.17 Direct and indirect objects

In addition to functioning as the **subject** of a verb, nouns can act as the **direct object** of the verb, or as the **indirect object** of the verb. In order for a verb to take an object, it must be a **transitive** verb, a verb that expresses an action that acts upon a recipient.

54.17.1 Direct object: function of the accusative case

The noun that receives the action of a verb in the active or middle voice is called the *direct object*. In Latin, the **accusative** case is the normal way to express this role in a clause: the accusative case is enough to show that the verb's action is done to it.

> Hercules killed *the eagle* (that was torturing Prometheus).

The eagle is what is being killed, so in Latin it goes into the accusative case: *aquilam* Hercules interfecit

54.17.2 Indirect object: function of the dative case

Some verbs may express actions that also involve a secondary recipient, a person or thing that is affected by or benefits from the action: that noun is acting as the **indirect object.**

One verb that makes it easy to see the role of the indirect object, in both English and Latin, is the verb "to give." (Latin grammarians in antiquity thought so, too: we have borrowed our term from the Latin *dativus casus*, "the case connected with giving.") In English, we can express the indirect object either by word order or with a preposition such as "to."

> "Hercules gave him (Philoctetes) his divien arrows." or "Hercules gave his divine arrows to him."

In both sentences "arrows" is the direct object of the verb "gave": the gifts are what is being directly affected by the action of the verb. The indirect object in both sentences is "him" (Philoctetes): as the recipient of the gifts, the action of giving affected Philoctetes in a secondary or indirect way. English expresses that by putting the indirect object before the direct object in the sentence, or with the preposition "to."

Can you think of other verbs in English that frequently have both a direct and an indirect object expressed with this syntax?

In Latin, the indirect object is expressed with the dative case. Word order can be used for other kinds of emphasis.

> Hercules suas sagittas diuinas *ei* donauit

54.18 Prepositions

54.19 Sentence Structures

Translating Latin sentences becomes much easier if you can recognize certain structural patterns that tell us what to expect in a sentence. Key to identifying what structural pattern a sentence follows is the **main verb**. The type of verb that appears in the sentence tells us what other grammatical items we need to fill out the rest of the sentence.

Below you will find a discussion of several very common sentence structures as well as guidelines for how to distinguish them by looking at the verb.

54.19.1 Intransitive Sentences

Intransitive sentences feature a subject and an **intransitive verb.** An intransitive verb is a verb that expresses an action or state of being, but does not act directly upon an object: for example, sneezing, dancing, running,

raining, etc. As a result, an intransitive verb (and, thus, an intransitive sentence) does not take a direct object (on which, see Transitive Sentences below).

Below are some examples of intransitive sentences in Latin and English:

- Puella cucurrit. ("The girl ran.")
- Timent. ("They are frightened.")

NB: It might be tempting to think that a sentence like "The girl ran three miles" has a direct object. However, "three miles" is the shortened form of "for three miles", an adverbial phrase that describes the word "ran." We'll learn more about phrases that express concepts of space and time in Module 3.

To summarize, intransitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Intransitive active verb

54.19.2 Transitive Sentences

Transitive sentences require a **direct object**, in addition to a subject and verb, to complete the meaning of the sentence.

For example, let's consider the verb *facere* ("to make" in English). If I were to say *agricola fēcit* - "the farmer made", the sentence would feel incomplete. You would be thinking, "What is he making? Pizza? Cake? A fence?"

Thus, we need to add a **direct object** to tell us what the farmer was making. In English, we would indicate this by putting what the farmer made immediately after the verb (e.g., "the farmer made pizza"). However, because Latin is an *inflected* language whose word order is highly variable, we can't do this. Rather, Latin indicates that a noun is functioning as a direct object by putting it in the **accusative case.** Thus, the Latin version of the sentence looks like this:

Agricola *pizzam* fēcit.

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **accusative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Below are some further examples of transitive sentences with accusative direct objects:

- Pater **fīliam** amāvit ("The father loved his daughter.")
- Fīliī **matrēs** amant. ("The sons love their mother.")
- **Agricolam** uxor iuvābat. ("The wife was helping the farmer.")
- Fortis vir **magnum monstrum** et **terribilem serpentem** pugnābat. ("The brave man is fighting the great monster and the terrible serpent.")

Sometimes, you will want to specify the recipient of the action of the verb. For instance, in the sentence "the farmer gave the girl a pizza", the girl receives the pizza that the farmer gives. Pizza is still the **direct object** - the farmer is giving the pizza (not the girl). In this sentence, the word "girl" is an **indirect object**, the recipient of the action done by the main verb. In Latin, we signal the **indirect object** by using the **dative case**, which we usually translate as "to/for X". So in Latin "the farmer gave the girl a pizza" looks like this:

- Agricola pizzam **puellae** dedit.

Literally, the sentence is "The farmer gave a pizza **to the girl**."

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **dative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

To summarize, transitive sentences must have a:

- Subject
- Active verb
- Direct object in the accusative

And sometimes have an:

- Indirect object in the dative

54.19.3 Passive Sentences

Passive sentences feature a subject and, unsurprisingly, a **passive** verb. Because the subject of a passive verb is being acted upon, passive sentences do not feature a direct object. Below are some examples of simple passive sentences:

- Puella visa est. ("The girl was seen.")
- Virī captī sunt. ("The men were captured.")

Sometimes, passive sentences feature a construction known as the **ablative of agent** which tells us who performed the action of the main verb (since the subject is *receiving* the action of the verb, rather than performing it). We can recognize the **ablative of agent** by the preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the **ablative case**. Below are the examples from above with an ablative of agent:

- Puella **ab matre** visa est. ("The girl was seen by her mother.")
- Virī **ā fēminīs** captī sunt. ("The men were captured by the women.")

Head to the noun paradigm charts and adjective paradigm charts to familiarize yourself with the **ablative** endings in the singular and plural of each declension and adjective grouping.

Passive sentences can also feature an **indirect object** in the **dative case** as well. For example, we might see a sentence like the following:

· Pizza **puellae** data est. ("The pizza was given to the girl.")

To summarize, passive sentences must have a:

· Subject
· Passive verb

And sometimes have an:

· An ablative of agent
· Indirect object in the dative

54.19.4 Linking Sentences

Linking sentences, which we have already met, require a subject, **linking verb**, and **predicate nominative** which matches the subject in **number** and **case** and, in the case of adjectives as predicate nominatives, **gender**. The most common linking verb in English and Latin is "to be" (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*), though there are other linking verbs we will see throughout the semester. Below are some examples of linking sentences:

· Vir pater est. ("The man is a father.")
· Puerī magnī et fortēs sunt. ("The boys are strong and brave.")

In each of the sentences above, note which nominatives are the subjects (*vir, puerī*) and which nominatives are the predicate nominatives (*pater, magnī* [*et*] *fortēs*).

To summarize, linking sentences must have a:

· Subject
· Linking verb *-Predicate nominative

54.19.5 Tips for Determining Sentence Structure

The most important thing to do when determining sentence structure is to look at the **main verb.** If the verb is passive, we know that the sentence structure is going to be **passive**; if the verb is a linking verb (i.e. a form of *sum*), then we know the sentence structure is going to be **linking.** It is more difficult to differentiate between transitive and intransitive verbs. While some Latin verbs are used only transitively (verbs like "to carry") and or only intransitively (verbs like "to rain"), a large number of verbs can be used both transitively or intransitively. In these cases, you will want to see if there is a direct object in the accusative case (transitive) or not (intransitive).

55 Richer sentences

In Unit 1, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences. In Unit 2, we will continue to practice these skills in the context of more complicated syntax, with a particular focus on the different ways that Latin expresses time and place.

We will begin by learning about prepositional phrases and how they can add meaning to Latin verbal expressions. We will build directly on this by looking how Latin uses these and other constructions to express place and time

We will then move on to look at how we can convey different time relations through verbal tense. We will learn about the present and the future tense. After learning these tenses, we will have gained experience working with all four principal parts of a Latin verb!

55.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

· Identify expressions of time using the accusative and ablative case
· Identify all persons of the present, future, imperfect, and perfect indicative in both active and passive voices
· Use principal parts to form present, future, imperfect and perfect forms of verbs
· Read more complex Latin sentences

56 Subordination

In Units 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases. In Unit 3, we will build on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences.

We will begin this unit with a consideration of subordination in Latin. We will learn about dependent clauses, focusing in particular on temporal clauses. In our discussion of dependent clauses, we will meet the subjunctive mood for the first time and learn how to form its imperfect and pluperfect tense. In doing so, we will begin to discuss what the subjunctive mood signifies in Latin, a conversation that we will continue for much of the next two semesters.

We will then move on to consider the place of the infinitive in Latin syntax. We will learn the present and perfect forms of the infinitive and discuss three usages of the infinitive: 1) as the subject of a Latin sentence; 2) as a word that complete the meaning of certain verbs; 3) as the main verb in an indirect statement (paraphrases but not quotations of what someone else has said).

56.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the difference between a dependent and independent clauses
- Identify temporal clauses
- Recognize and form the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive
- Recognize and form different tenses of *possum*
- Recognize and form different tense-voice combinations of the infinitive
- Identify different uses of the infinitive
- Recognize and formulate an indirect statement in Latin

57 Further subordination

In Unit 1 and 2, we learned how verbs and nouns conjugate and decline to create meaning and structure in Latin sentences, as well as how to express ideas like time and place using prepositional phrases and we built on this foundation and begin to read more complex sentences (cum clauses and indirect statements) in Unit 3. Unit 4 will introduce you to some new verbal forms that appear commonly in the Latin language.

We will start by learning the conjugation of several very common irregular verbs including sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero. This will not only help us to recognize these verbs when they show up in Latin texts, but also provide an opportunity to review the fundamentals of verb formation. We will also learn about deponent and semi-deponent verbs, a special class of verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. In addition to learning these new forms, we will also learn two more tenses of the subjunctive, the present and perfect.

We will make use of these verbal forms as continue to practice translating complex sentences. We will continue to focus on translating indirect statements as well as temporal clauses with and without the subjunctive.

57.1 Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

Recognize and form a number of very common irregular verbs (sum, possum, volo, nolo, eo, and fero) Recognize and form deponent and semi-deponent verbs Recognize and form the present and perfect tenses of the subjunctive Recognize and translate temporal clauses Recognize and translate indirect statements

58 Some less freqent forms

We will begin unit 5 by going over the declension of nouns and adjectives from the first three declensions as well as the pronouns that we learned last semester. We will then move on to a full scale review of the Latin verbal forms that we met last semester. As we review these forms, we will also practice and review different grammatical structures that we saw last semester.

In addition to a review of old forms, we will meet some new ones to fill out our knowledge of Latin morphology. In terms of substantive forms, we will learn the fourth and fifth declension, two relatively obscure declensions that have some important members. We will also learn some verbal forms as well, including the first and second-person and the pluperfect indicative.

58.1 Objectives

By the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

· Recognize and produce all substantive inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
· Recognize and produce (almost) all verbal inflection patterns and analyze their grammatical function in sentences
· Feel confident about the different grammatical structures that we met last semester

59   Relative clauses, participles, and gerunds

In Unit 1, we spent some time reviewing key concepts from last semester. In Unit 2, we will learn about different ways in which nouns, adjectives, and pronouns can be used to add further color to a Latin sentence.

We will begin by learning about relative clauses, a type of dependent clause that provides further information about a previous noun. We will then move on to learn about participles, a type of verbal adjective, that provides more information about the actions and behaviors of a noun within a sentence. We will conclude by looking at gerunds (verbal nouns) and gerundives (verbal adjectives) and the different constructions that they belong to.

Objectives

By the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

Recognize relative clauses and analyze their grammatical function in sentences Recognize participles and understand how they add complexity to sentences Recognize gerunds and gerundives and identify the way that they are being used in sentences

60 Dependent clauses with the subjunctive

TBA

61 Reference

62 Regular Verbs - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

· 1st Conjugation: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* - to love
· 2nd Conjugation: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* - to warn, advise
· 3rd Conjugation: *regō, regere, rexī, rectus* - to rule
· 3rd -iō Conjugation: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* - to take, seize
· 4th Conjugation: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus* - to hear

---

62.1 Indicative - Active

62.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**ō**	mone**ō**	reg**ō**	capi**ō**	audi**ō**
2nd sg.	am**ās**	mon**ēs**	reg**is**	cap**is**	aud**īs**
3rd sg.	am**at**	mon**et**	reg**it**	cap**it**	aud**it**
1st pl.	am**āmus**	mon**ēmus**	reg**imus**	capi**mus**	aud**īmus**
2nd pl.	am**ātis**	mon**ētis**	reg**itis**	cap**itis**	aud**ītis**
3rd pl.	am**ant**	mon**ent**	reg**unt**	cap**iunt**	audi**unt**

62.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2nd sg.	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3rd sg.	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

62.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābō	monēbō	regam	capiam	audiam
2nd sg.	amābis	monēbis	regēs	capiēs	audiēs
3rd sg.	amābit	monēbit	reget	capiet	audiet
1st pl.	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	capiētis	audiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	capient	audient

62.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	cēpī	audīvī
2nd sg.	amāvistī	monuistī	rexistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
3rd sg.	amāvit	monuit	rexit	cēpit	audīvit
1st pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	reximus	cēpimus	audīvimus
2nd pl.	amāvistis	monuistis	rexistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
3rd pl.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rexērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl. alt.	amāvēre	monuēre	rexēre	cēpēre	audivēre

62.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāveram	monueram	rexeram	cēperam	audīveram
2nd sg.	amāverās	monuerās	rexerās	cēperās	audīverās
3rd sg.	amāverat	monuerat	rexerat	cēperat	audīverat
1st pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rexerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
2nd pl.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rexerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
3rd pl.	amāverant	monuerant	rexerant	cēperant	audīverant

62.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverō	monuerō	rexerō	cēperō	audīverō
2nd sg.	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	cēperis	audīveris
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
2nd pl.	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

62.2 Indicative - Passive

62.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
2nd sg.	amāris	monēris	regeris	caperis	audīris
3rd sg.	amātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	audītur
1st pl.	amāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audīmur
2nd pl.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3rd pl.	amantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

62.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2nd sg.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
3rd sg.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

62.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
2nd sg.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	capiēris	audiēris
3rd sg.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
1st pl.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

62.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	rectus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum	audītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	rectus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es	audītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	rectus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est	audītus, -a, -um est
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	rectī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	rectī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis	audītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	rectī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sunt

62.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	rectus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram	audītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	rectus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās	audītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	rectus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat	audītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a erāmus	rectī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	monitī, -ae, -a erātis	rectī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erant	monitī, -ae, -a erant	rectī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a erant	audītī, -ae, -a erant

62.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um erō	monitus, -a, -um erō	rectus, -a, -um erō	captus, -a, -um erō	audītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um eris	monitus, -a, -um eris	rectus, -a, -um eris	captus, -a, -um eris	audītus, -a, -um eris
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um erit	monitus, -a, -um erit	rectus, -a, -um erit	captus, -a, -um erit	audītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erimus	monitī, -ae, -a erimus	rectī, -ae, -a erimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a eritis	monitī, -ae, -a eritis	rectī, -ae, -a eritis	captī, -ae, -a eritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a erunt	monitī, -ae, -a erunt	rectī, -ae, -a erunt	captī, -ae, -a erunt	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

62.3 Subjunctive - Active

62.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**em**	mon**eam**	reg**am**	cap**iam**	aud**iam**
2nd sg.	am**ēs**	mon**eās**	reg**ās**	cap**iās**	aud**iās**
3rd sg.	am**et**	mon**eat**	reg**at**	cap**iat**	aud**iat**
1st pl.	am**ēmus**	mon**eāmus**	reg**āmus**	cap**iāmus**	aud**iāmus**
2nd pl.	am**ētis**	mon**eātis**	reg**ātis**	cap**iātis**	aud**iātis**
3rd pl.	am**ent**	mon**eant**	reg**ant**	cap**iant**	aud**iant**

62.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
2nd sg.	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3rd sg.	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret
1st pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3rd pl.	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent

62.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	cēperim	audīverim
2nd sg.	amāverīs	monuerīs	rexerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
3rd sg.	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	cēperit	audīverit
1st pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rexerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
2nd pl.	amāverītis	monuerītis	rexerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
3rd pl.	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	cēperint	audīverint

62.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amāvissem	monuissem	rexissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
2nd sg.	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
3rd sg.	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
1st pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
2nd pl.	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd pl.	amā**vissent**	monu**issent**	rex**issent**	cēp**issent**	audī**vissent**

62.4 Subjunctive - Passive

62.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	am**er**	mon**ear**	reg**ar**	cap**iar**	aud**iar**
2nd sg.	am**ēris**	mon**eāris**	reg**āris**	cap**iāris**	aud**iāris**
3rd sg.	am**ētur**	mon**eātur**	reg**ātur**	cap**iātur**	aud**iātur**
1st pl.	am**ēmur**	mon**eāmur**	reg**āmur**	cap**iāmur**	aud**iāmur**
2nd pl.	am**ēminī**	mon**eāminī**	reg**āminī**	cap**iāminī**	aud**iāminī**
3rd pl.	am**entur**	mon**eantur**	reg**antur**	cap**iantur**	aud**iantur**

62.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amā**rer**	monē**rer**	rege**rer**	cape**rer**	audī**rer**
2nd sg.	amā**rēris**	monērē*ris**	regē**rēris**	caperē**ris**	audī**rēris**
3rd sg.	amā**rētur**	monē**rētur**	regē**rētur**	caperē**tur**	audī**rētur**
1st pl.	amā**rēmur**	monē**rēmur**	regē**rēmur**	caperē**mur**	audī**rēmur**
2nd pl.	amā**rēminī**	monē**rēminī**	regē**rēminī**	caperē**minī**	audī**rēminī**
3rd pl.	amā**rentur**	monē**rentur**	rege**rentur**	cape**rentur**	audī**rentur**

62.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	rectus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	rectus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	rectus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit	audītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	rectī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	rectī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	rectī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

62.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	amātus, -a, -um essem	monitus, -a, -um essem	rectus, -a, -um essem	captus, -a, -um essem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	amātus, -a, -um essēs	monitus, -a, -um essēs	rectus, -a, -um essēs	captus, -a, -um essēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3rd sg.	amātus, -a, -um esset	monitus, -a, -um esset	rectus, -a, -um esset	captus, -a, -um esset	audītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a essēmus	rectī, -ae, -a essēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essētis	monitī, -ae, -a essētis	rectī, -ae, -a essētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	amātī, -ae, -a essent	monitī, -ae, -a essent	rectī, -ae, -a essent	captī, -ae, -a essent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

62.5 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Act.	amāre	monēre	regere	capere	audīre
Pres. Pass.	amārī	monērī	regī	capī	audīrī
Perf. Act.	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
Perf. Pass.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
Fut. Act.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rectūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse
Fut. Pass.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rectum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

62.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	ama**ndum**	mone**ndum**	rege**ndum**	capie**ndum**	audie**ndum**
Gerundive	ama**ndus, -a, -um**	mone**ndus, -a, -um**	rege**ndus, -a, -um**	capie**ndus, -a, -um**	audie**ndus, -a, -um**

63 Deponent Verbs - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

· 1st Conjugation: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum* - to exhort, encourage
· 2nd Conjugation: *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* - to fear
· 3rd Conjugation: *loquor, loquī, locutus sum* - to speak
· 3rd -iō Conjugation: *morior, morī, mortuus sum* - to die
· 4th Conjugation: *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* - to gain possession of

---

63.1 Indicative - Passive (Deponent)

63.1.1 Present Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hort**or**	vere**or**	loqu**or**	mori**or**	poti**or**
2nd sg.	hortā**ris**	verē**ris**	loque**ris**	more**ris**	potī**ris**
3rd sg.	hortā**tur**	verē**tur**	loqui**tur**	mori**tur**	potī**tur**
1st pl.	hortā**mur**	verē**mur**	loqui**mur**	mori**mur**	potī**mur**
2nd pl.	hortā**minī**	verē**minī**	loqui**minī**	mori**minī**	potī**minī**
3rd pl.	horta**ntur**	vere**ntur**	loquu**ntur**	moriu**ntur**	potiu**ntur**

63.1.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	moriēbar	potiēbar
2nd sg.	hortābāris	verēbāris	loquēbāris	moriēbāris	potiēbāris
3rd sg.	hortābātur	verēbātur	loquēbātur	moriēbātur	potiēbātur
1st pl.	hortābāmur	verēbāmur	loquēbāmur	moriēbāmur	potiēbāmur
2nd pl.	hortābāminī	verēbāminī	loquēbāminī	moriēbāminī	potiēbāminī
3rd pl.	hortābantur	verēbantur	loquēbantur	moriēbantur	potiēbantur

63.1.3 Future Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	moriar	potiar
2nd sg.	hortāberis	verēberis	loquēris	moriēris	potiēris
3rd sg.	hortābitur	verēbitur	loquētur	moriētur	potiētur
1st pl.	hortābimur	verēbimur	loquēmur	moriēmur	potiēmur
2nd pl.	hortābiminī	verēbiminī	loquēminī	moriēminī	potiēminī
3rd pl.	hortābuntur	verēbuntur	loquentur	morientur	potientur

63.1.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sum	veritus, -a, -um sum	locutus, -a, -um sum	mortuus, -a, -um sum	potītus, -a, -um sum
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um es	veritus, -a, -um es	locutus, -a, -um es	mortuus, -a, -um es	potītus, -a, -um es
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um est	veritus, -a, -um est	locutus, -a, -um est	mortuus, -a, -um est	potītus, -a, -um est

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sumus	veritī, -ae, -a sumus	locutī, -ae, -a sumus	mortuī, -ae, -a sumus	potītī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a estis	veritī, -ae, -a estis	locutī, -ae, -a estis	mortuī, -ae, -a estis	potītī, -ae, -a estis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sunt	veritī, -ae, -a sunt	locutī, -ae, -a sunt	mortuī, -ae, -a sunt	potītī, -ae, -a sunt

63.1.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eram	veritus, -a, -um eram	locutus, -a, -um eram	mortuus, -a, -um eram	potītus, -a, -um eram
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erās	veritus, -a, -um erās	locutus, -a, -um erās	mortuus, -a, -um erās	potītus, -a, -um erās
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erat	veritus, -a, -um erat	locutus, -a, -um erat	mortuus, -a, -um erat	potītus, -a, -um erat
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erāmus	veritī, -ae, -a erāmus	locutī, -ae, -a erāmus	mortuī, -ae, -a erāmus	potītī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erātis	veritī, -ae, -a erātis	locutī, -ae, -a erātis	mortuī, -ae, -a erātis	potītī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erant	veritī, -ae, -a erant	locutī, -ae, -a erant	mortuī, -ae, -a erant	potītī, -ae, -a erant

63.1.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erō	veritus, -a, -um erō	locutus, -a, -um erō	mortuus, -a, -um erō	potītus, -a, -um erō
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um eris	veritus, -a, -um eris	locutus, -a, -um eris	mortuus, -a, -um eris	potītus, -a, -um eris

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um erit	veritus, -a, -um erit	locutus, -a, -um erit	mortuus, -a, -um erit	potītus, -a, -um erit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erimus	veritī, -ae, -a erimus	locutī, -ae, -a erimus	mortuī, -ae, -a erimus	potītī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a eritis	veritī, -ae, -a eritis	locutī, -ae, -a eritis	mortuī, -ae, -a eritis	potītī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a erunt	veritī, -ae, -a erunt	locutī, -ae, -a erunt	mortuī, -ae, -a erunt	potītī, -ae, -a erunt

63.2 Subjunctive - Passive (Deponent)

63.2.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

Stem vowel changes are included in the bolded endings.

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hort**er**	ver**ear**	loqu**ar**	mor**iar**	pot**iar**
2nd sg.	hort**ēris**	ver**eāris**	loqu**āris**	mor**iāris**	pot**iāris**
3rd sg.	hort**ētur**	ver**eātur**	loqu**ātur**	mor**iātur**	pot**iātur**
1st pl.	hort**ēmur**	ver**eāmur**	loqu**āmur**	mor**iāmur**	pot**iāmur**
2nd pl.	hort**ēminī**	ver**eāminī**	loqu**āminī**	mor**iāminī**	pot**iāminī**
3rd pl.	hort**entur**	ver**eantur**	loqu**antur**	mor**iantur**	pot**iantur**

63.2.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortā**rer**	verē**rer**	loque**rer**	more**rer**	potī**rer**

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
2nd sg.	hortārēris	verērēris	loquerēris	morerēris	potīrēris
3rd sg.	hortārētur	verērētur	loquerētur	morerētur	potīrētur
1st pl.	hortārēmur	verērēmur	loquerēmur	morerēmur	potīrēmur
2nd pl.	hortārēminī	verērēminī	loquerēminī	morerēminī	potīrēminī
3rd pl.	hortārentur	verērentur	loquerentur	morerentur	potīrentur

63.2.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sim	veritus, -a, -um sim	locutus, -a, -um sim	mortuus, -a, -um sim	potītus, -a, -um sim
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sīs	veritus, -a, -um sīs	locutus, -a, -um sīs	mortuus, -a, -um sīs	potītus, -a, -um sīs
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um sit	veritus, -a, -um sit	locutus, -a, -um sit	mortuus, -a, -um sit	potītus, -a, -um sit
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sīmus	veritī, -ae, -a sīmus	locutī, -ae, -a sīmus	mortuī, -ae, -a sīmus	potītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sītis	veritī, -ae, -a sītis	locutī, -ae, -a sītis	mortuī, -ae, -a sītis	potītī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a sint	veritī, -ae, -a sint	locutī, -ae, -a sint	mortuī, -ae, -a sint	potītī, -ae, -a sint

63.2.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
1st sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essem	veritus, -a, -um essem	locutus, -a, -um essem	mortuus, -a, -um essem	potītus, -a, -um essem
2nd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um essēs	veritus, -a, -um essēs	locutus, -a, -um essēs	mortuus, -a, -um essēs	potītus, -a, -um essēs

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
3rd sg.	hortātus, -a, -um esset	veritus, -a, -um esset	locutus, -a, -um esset	mortuus, -a, -um esset	potītus, -a, -um esset
1st pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essēmus	veritī, -ae, -a essēmus	locutī, -ae, -a essēmus	mortuī, -ae, -a essēmus	potītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essētis	veritī, -ae, -a essētis	locutī, -ae, -a essētis	mortuī, -ae, -a essētis	potītī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd pl.	hortātī, -ae, -a essent	veritī, -ae, -a essent	locutī, -ae, -a essent	mortuī, -ae, -a essent	potītī, -ae, -a essent

63.3 Infinitives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Pres. Pass.	hortārī	verērī	loquī	morī	potīrī
Perf. Pass.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	locutus esse	mortuus esse	potītus esse
Fut. Act.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locutūrus esse	mortuūrus esse	potītūrus esse

63.4 Gerunds and Gerundives

	1st	2nd	3rd	3rd -iō	4th
Gerund	horta**ndum**	vere**ndum**	loque**ndum**	morie**ndum**	potie**ndum**
Gerundive	horta**ndus, -a, -um**	vere**ndus, -a, -um**	loque**ndus, -a, -um**	morie**ndus, -a, -um**	potie**ndus, -a, -um**

64 Nouns - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

64.1 First Declension

64.1.1 *puella, puellae,* f. - girl

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puell**a**	puell**ae**
Genitive	puell**ae**	puell**ārum**
Dative	puell**ae**	puell**īs**
Accusative	puell**am**	puell**ās**
Ablative	puell**ā**	puell**īs**

64.2 Second Declension Masculine

64.2.1 *maritus, maritī,* m. - husband

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	marit**us**	marit**ī**
Genitive	marit**ī**	marit**ōrum**

Case	Singular	Plural
Dative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**
Accusative	marit**um**	marit**ōs**
Ablative	marit**ō**	marit**īs**

64.2.2 *ager, agrī*, m. - field

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ager	agr**ī**
Genitive	agr**ī**	agr**ōrum**
Dative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**
Accusative	agr**um**	agr**ōs**
Ablative	agr**ō**	agr**īs**

64.3 Second Declension Neuter

64.3.1 *exemplum, exemplī*, n. - example

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Genitive	exempl**ī**	exempl**ōrum**
Dative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**
Accusative	exempl**um**	exempl**a**
Ablative	exempl**ō**	exempl**īs**

64.4 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.4.1 *mater, matris,* **f. - mother**

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	māter*	mātrēs
Genitive	mātris	mātrum
Dative	mātrī	mātribus
Accusative	mātrem	mātrēs
Ablative	mātre	mātribus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending.

64.5 Third Declension Masculine/Feminine i-stem

64.5.1 *urbs, urbis,* **f. - city**

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	urbs*	urbēs
Genitive	urbis	urbium**
Dative	urbī	urbibus
Accusative	urbem	urbēs
Ablative	urbe	urbibus

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** Note the extra i in the genitive plural ending: *-ium,* rather than simply *-um.*

64.6   Third Declension Neuter

64.6.1   *nōmen, nōminis,* n. - name

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nōmen*	nōmin**a**
Genitive	nōmin**is**	nōmin**um**
Dative	nōmin**ī**	nōmin**ibus**
Accusative	nōmen**	nōmin**a****
Ablative	nōmin**e**	nōmin**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

64.7   Third Declension Neuter i-stem

64.7.1   *mare, maris,* n. - sea

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mare*	mar**ia*****
Genitive	mar**is**	mar**ium*****
Dative	mar**ī**	mar**ibus**
Accusative	mare**	mar**ia*****
Ablative	marī***	mar**ibus**

* Nominative forms of third declension nouns are highly variable; there is no one set or common ending. ** The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular). *** Note the replacement of the normal ablative singlar ending -e with -ī and the extra i in the endings of the nominative, genitive, and accusative plurals.

64.8 Fourth Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.8.1 *manus, manūs,* f. - hand

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	man**us**	man**ūs**
Genitive	man**ūs**	man**uum**
Dative	man**uī**	man**ibus**
Accusative	man**um**	man**ūs**
Ablative	man**ū**	man**ibus**

64.9 Fourth Declension Neuter

64.9.1 *genū, genūs,* n. - knee

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Genitive	gen**ūs**	gen**uum**
Dative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**
Accusative	gen**ū**	gen**ua**
Ablative	gen**ū**	gen**ibus**

64.10 Fifth Declension Masculine/Feminine

64.10.1 *rēs, reī*, f. - thing, matter, situation, affair

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	rēs	rēs
Genitive	reī	rērum
Dative	reī	rēbus
Accusative	rem	rēs
Ablative	rē	rēbus

64.10.2 *diēs, diēī*, m. - day

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	diēs	diēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus

65 Adjectives - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

65.1 2-1-2 adjectives

65.1.1 *bonus, bona, bonum* - good

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Genitive	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dative	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Accusative	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Ablative	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Genitive	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Accusative	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Ablative	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

65.1.2 *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* - beautiful, handsome

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulcher	pulchr**a**	pulchr**um**
Genitive	pulchr**ī**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ī**
Dative	pulchr**ō**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**ō**
Accusative	pulchr**um**	pulchr**am**	pulchr**um**
Ablative	pulchr**ō**	pulchr**ā**	pulchr**ō**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	pulchr**ī**	pulchr**ae**	pulchr**a**
Genitive	pulchr**ōrum**	pulchr**ārum**	pulchr**ōrum**
Dative	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**
Accusative	pulchr**ōs**	pulchr**ās**	pulchr**a**
Ablative	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**	pulchr**īs**

65.2 2-1-2 - īus adjectives

65.2.1 *nullus, nulla, nullum* - no, none

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	null**us***	null**a**	null**um****
Genitive	null**īus**	null**īus**	null**īus**
Dative	null**ī**	null**ī**	null**ī**

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Accusative	null**um**	null**am**	null**um**
Ablative	null**ō**	null**ā**	null**ō**

* Some masculine nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -r (e.g., *alter, altera, alterum*). ** Some neuter nominative singulars of -īus adjectives end in -d (e.g., *alius, alia, aliud*).

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	null**ī**	null**ae**	null**a**
Genitive	null**ōrum**	null**ārum**	null**ōrum**
Dative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**
Accusative	null**ōs**	null**ās**	null**a**
Ablative	null**īs**	null**īs**	null**īs**

65.3 Three-Termination Adjectives

65.3.1 *ācer, ācris, ācre* - **keen, sharp**

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācr**is**	ācr**e**
Genitive	ācr**is**	ācr**is**	ācr**is**
Dative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**
Accusative	ācr**em**	ācr**em**	ācr**e**
Ablative	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**	ācr**ī**

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

65.4 Two-Termination Adjectives

65.4.1 *fortis, forte* - strong, brave

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortis	forte
Genitive	fortis	fortis
Dative	fortī	fortī
Accusative	fortem	forte
Ablative	fortī	fortī

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	fortēs	fortia
Genitive	fortium	fortium
Dative	fortibus	fortibus
Accusative	fortēs	fortia

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Ablative	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**

65.5 One-Termination Adjectives

65.5.1 *sapiēns, sapientis* - wise

Singular

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapiēns	sapiēns
Genitive	sapient**is**	sapient**is**
Dative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**
Accusative	sapient**em**	sapiēns*
Ablative	sapient**ī**	sapient**ī**

* The accusative forms of all **neuter** nouns, adjectives, and pronouns exactly match their nominative counterparts within the same number (e.g., neuter accusative singular = neuter nominative singular).

Plural

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Genitive	sapient**ium**	sapient**ium**
Dative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**
Accusative	sapient**ēs**	sapient**ia**
Ablative	sapient**ibus**	sapient**ibus**

65.6 Interrogative

65.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - which? what?

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

65.7 Declinable Numerals

65.7.1 *ūnus, -a, -um* - one

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

65.7.2 *duo, duae, duo* - two

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

65.7.3 *trēs, tria* - three

Case	M./F.	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

66 Irregular Verbs - Paradigms

· TOC {:toc}

Paradigm Verbs:

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus - to be
- eō, īre, īvī/iī, ītus - to go
- ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus - to bear, carry
- volō, velle, voluī - to want, wish
- nōlō, nolle, noluī - not to want
- mālō, malle, maluī - to prefer

66.1 Indicative - Active

66.1.1 Present Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
2nd sg.	es	īs	fers	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
3rd sg.	est	it	fert	vult	nōn vult	māvult
1st pl.	sumus	īmus	ferimus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
2nd pl.	estis	ītis	fertis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3rd pl.	sunt	eunt	ferunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

66.1.2 Imperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	eram	ībam	ferēbam	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
2nd sg.	erās	ībās	ferēbās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
3rd sg.	erat	ībat	ferēbat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
1st pl.	erāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2nd pl.	erātis	ībātis	ferēbātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
3rd pl.	erant	ībant	ferēbant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

66.1.3 Future Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	erō	ībō	feram	volam	nōlam	mālam
2nd sg.	eris	ībis	ferēs	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3rd sg.	erit	ībit	feret	volet	nōlet	mālet
1st pl.	erimus	ībimus	ferēmus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2nd pl.	eritis	ībitis	ferētis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3rd pl.	erunt	ībunt	ferent	volent	nōlent	mālent

66.1.4 Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuī	īvī or iī	tulī	voluī	nōluī	māluī
2nd sg.	fuistī	īstī	tulistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
3rd sg.	fuit	iit	tulit	voluit	nōluit	māluit
1st pl.	fuimus	iimus	tulimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
2nd pl.	fuistis	īstis	tulistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
3rd pl.	fuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
3rd pl. alt.	fuēre	īēre	tulēre	voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre

66.1.5 Pluperfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fueram	ieram	tuleram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
2nd sg.	fuerās	ierās	tulerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
3rd sg.	fuerat	ierat	tulerat	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
1st pl.	fuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
2nd pl.	fuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
3rd pl.	fuerant	ierant	tulerant	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

66.1.6 Future Perfect Active Indicative

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerō	ierō	tulerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2nd sg.	fueris	ieris	tuleris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2nd pl.	fueritis	ieritis	tuleritis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

66.2 Indicative - Passive (ferō)

66.2.1 Present Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	feror	ferimur
2nd	ferris	feriminī
3rd	fertur	feruntur

66.2.2 Imperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2nd	ferēbāris	ferēbāminī
3rd	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

66.2.3 Future Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferēmur
2nd	ferēris	ferēminī
3rd	ferētur	ferentur

66.2.4 Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sum	lātī, -ae, -a sumus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um es	lātī, -ae, -a estis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um est	lātī, -ae, -a sunt

66.2.5 Pluperfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um eram	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um erās	lātī, -ae, -a erātis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erat	lātī, -ae, -a erant

66.2.6 Future Perfect Passive Indicative

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um erō	lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um eris	lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um erit	lātī, -ae, -a erunt

66.3 Subjunctive - Active

66.3.1 Present Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	sim	eam	feram	velim	nōlim	mālim
2nd sg.	sīs	eās	ferās	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3rd sg.	sit	eat	ferat	velit	nōlit	mālit
1st pl.	sīmus	eāmus	ferāmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	sītis	eātis	ferātis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3rd pl.	sint	eant	ferant	velint	nōlint	mālint

66.3.2 Imperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	essem	īrem	ferrem	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2nd sg.	essēs	īrēs	ferrēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3rd sg.	esset	īret	ferret	vellet	nōllet	māllet
1st pl.	essēmus	īrēmus	ferrēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2nd pl.	essētis	īrētis	ferrētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3rd pl.	essent	īrent	ferrent	vellent	nōllent	māllent

66.3.3 Perfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuerim	ierim	tulerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2nd sg.	fuerīs	ierīs	tulerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
3rd sg.	fuerit	ierit	tulerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
1st pl.	fuerīmus	ierīmus	tulerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
2nd pl.	fuerītis	ierītis	tulerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
3rd pl.	fuerint	ierint	tulerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

66.3.4 Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō	mālō
1st sg.	fuissem	īssem	tulissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2nd sg.	fuissēs	īssēs	tulissēs	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3rd sg.	fuisset	īsset	tulisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
1st pl.	fuissēmus	īssēmus	tulissēmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2nd pl.	fuissētis	īssētis	tulissētis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3rd pl.	fuissent	īssent	tulissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

66.4 Subjunctive - Passive (ferō)

66.4.1 Present Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferar	ferāmur
2nd	ferāris	ferāminī
3rd	ferātur	ferantur

66.4.2 Imperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	ferrer	ferrēmur
2nd	ferrēris	ferrēminī
3rd	ferrētur	ferrentur

66.4.3 Perfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um sim	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um sīs	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um sit	lātī, -ae, -a sint

66.4.4 Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

	Singular	Plural
1st	lātus, -a, -um essem	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2nd	lātus, -a, -um essēs	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3rd	lātus, -a, -um esset	lātī, -ae, -a essent

66.5 Infinitives

	sum	eō	ferō	volō	nōlō
Pres. Act.	esse	īre	ferre	velle	nolle
Pres. Pass.			ferrī		
Perf. Act.	fuisse	īsse	tulisse	voluisse	nōluisse
Perf. Pass.			lātus esse		
Fut. Act.	futūrus esse / fōre	itūrus esse	lātūrus esse		
Fut. Pass.			lātum īrī		

66.6 Gerunds and Gerundives

	eō	ferō
Gerund	eu**ndum**	fere**ndum**
Gerundive	eu**ndus, -a, -um**	fere**ndus, -a, -um**

67 Pronouns - Paradigms

- TOC {:toc}

67.1 Demonstratives

Note that demonstrative pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as demonstrative *adjectives*.

67.1.1 *hic, haec, hoc* - this, these

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc
Genitive	huius	huius	huius
Dative	huic	huic	huic
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hōs	hās	haec

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	hīs	hīs	hīs

67.1.2 *ille, illa, illud* - that, those

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ille	illa	illud
Genitive	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dative	illī	illī	illī
Accusative	illum	illam	illud
Ablative	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illīs	illīs	illīs

67.2 Intensives

Note that intensive pronouns can also modify nouns and thus serve as intensive *adjectives*.

67.2.1 *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* - the very ____, ____self

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Genitive	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dative	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Accusative	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ablative	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Genitive	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Accusative	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ablative	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

67.3 Personal

67.3.1 *is, ea, id* - he, she, it, they (3rd person)

Note that the 3rd person personal pronoun can also modify nouns and thus serve as a demonstrative *adjective*; this demonstrative has a more general force and doesn't indicate distance from the speaker in the way that *hic* or *ille* do.

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	is	ea	id
Genitive	eius	eius	eius
Dative	eī	eī	eī
Accusative	eum	eam	id
Ablative	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	eī / iī	eae	ea
Genitive	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eīs	eīs	eīs

67.3.2 *ego* - I, me, we, us (1st person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ego	nōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

67.3.3 *tū* - you, you all (2nd person)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	tū	vōs
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

67.4 Reflexive

67.4.1 1st person (myself, ourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	meī	nostrum / nostrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs

67.4.2 2nd person (yourself, yourselves)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	—	—
Genitive	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dative	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	tē	vōs
Ablative	tē	vōbīs

67.4.3 3rd person (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

Case	Sing./Pl.
Nominative	—
Genitive	suī
Dative	sibi
Accusative	sē
Ablative	sē

67.5 Interrogative

67.5.1 *quis, quid* - who? which? what?

Singular

Case	M/F	N
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

67.6 Relative

67.6.1 *quī, quae, quod* - who, which, that

Singular

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quam	quod
Ablative	quō	quā	quō

Plural

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus

68 Vocabulary lists

The lists linked below give dictionary forms and very brief definitions for ca. 250 of the most frequently occuring words in Hyginus' *Fabulae.* You can find very full entries with examples of usage in the searchable online version of Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* (from Furman University).

> These 250 terms represent roughly 2/3 of all the words in Hyginus' text!

The vocabulary lists use j and v for consonantal sounds, i and u for vocalic sounds. This is the same spelling convention that you will find in the Lewis-Short Dictionary. Remember that we often use texts with different spelling conventions (e.g., *i* for both consonantal and vocalic sounds), so that to find a vocbulary entry for a form like iussit (third singular perfect active indicative), you would look under j to find jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus.

69 Prepositions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ab *or* a+ *abl*: away from
- ad + *acc*: towards
- apud + *acc*: at, with, by, near
- cum + *abl*: with
- de + *abl*: from, down from
- ex + *abl*: out of
- in + *abl*: in
- in + *acc*: into
- inter + *acc*: between, among
- ob + *acc*: on account of
- per + *acc*: through
- post + *acc*: after
- pro + *abl*: in front of, on behalf of
- propter + *acc*: on account of
- super + *acc*: above, on top of

70 Pronouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ego: *personal pronoun*, I
- hic, haec, hoc: *demonstrative pronoun*, this one
- ille, illa, illud: *demonstrative pronoun*, that one
- ipse: *intensifyiing pronoun*, **he** (himself), **she** herself
- is, ea, id: *demonstrative pronoun*, he, she, it
- qui, quae, quod: *relative pronoun*, who, which
- quis, quid: *interrogative pronoun*, who, what
- quisque: *indefinite pronoun*, whoever
- sui: *reflexive pronoun* himself, herself

71 Most frequent verbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- accipio, accipĕre, accepi, acceptus: *to receive, to perceive*
- adduco, adducĕre, adduxi, adductus: *to lead or conduct*
- aio (*irregular, exists only in a few forms*) : *to say, assert*
- amitto, amittĕre, amisi, amissus: *to dismiss, send away, to lose*
- amo, amare, amavi, amatus: *to love*
- appello, appellare, appelavi, appellatus: *to address, name*
- audio, audire, audivi, auditus: *to hear*
- cano, canĕre, cecini, cantus: *to sing*
- capio, capĕre, cepi, captus: *to seize*
- coepio, coepĕre, coepi, coeptus: *to begin*
- cognosco, cognoscĕre, cognovi, cognitus: *to know, become acquainted with*
- commuto, commutare, commutavi, commutatus: *to change, interchange*
- comprimo, comprimĕre, compressi, compressus: *to squeeze together, to repress*
- concumbo, concumbĕre, concubui, concubitus: *to sleep with*
- conicio (*or* coicio, *or* conjicio), conjicĕre, conjeci, conjectus: *to cast, to connect, to discuss*
- constituo,constituĕre, constitui, constitutus: *to establish, prepare*
- consumo, consumĕre, consumpsi, consumptus: *to devour*
- contendo, contendĕre, contendi, contentus: *to extend, to exert, to strive with*
- converto, convertĕre, converti, conversus: *to turn, alter*
- cresco, crescĕre, crevi, cretus: *to be born, appear*
- dedo, dedĕre, dedidi, deditus: *to give away, give up, surrender*
- defero, deferre, detuli, delatus: *to carry away, convey*
- dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictus: *to say*
- do, dare, dedi, datus: *to give*
- duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductus: *to lead*
- eo, ire, ii *or* ivi, -: *to go*
- exeo, exire, exivi *or* exii, exitus: *to go out*
- expono, exponĕre, exposui, expositus: *to set forth, expose*
- facio, facĕre, feci, factus: *to make*
- fero, ferre, tuli, latus: *to bear, carry*

- fio, fiĕri, -, factus: *to become, be produced*
- habeo, habēre, habui, habitus: *to have*
- immolo, immolare, immolavi, immolatus: *to sacrifice*
- impono, imponĕre, imposui, impositus: *to set upon or over*
- intereo, interire, interii *or* iterivi, iteritus: *to perish, be ruined*
- interficio, interficĕre, interfeci, interfectus: *destroy, kill*
- invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus: *to discover, find out*
- irascor, irasci, -, iratus: *to be angry, enraged*
- jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussus: *to order, prescribe*
- jungo, jungĕre, junxi, junctus: *to connect, join together*
- libero, liberare, liberavi, liberatus: *to free*
- libet, libēre, libuit, libitus (*impersonal*): *to be pleasing or agreeable*
- loco, locare, locavi, locatus: *to place, arrange*
- mitto, mittĕre, misi, missus: *to send*
- moneo, monēre, monui, monitus: *to war*
- morior, mori, -, mortuus: *to die*
- nascor, nasci, -, natus: *to be born*
- neco, necare, necavi, necatus: *to slay*
- nego, negare, negavi, negatus: *to say no, refuse*
- nitor, niti, -, nisus *or* nixus: *to lean on, to strive for*
- nolo, nolle, nolui, -: *to wish..not, to be unwilling*
- nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus: *to name, call by name*
- obicio *or* objicio, obicĕre, objeci, objectus: *to throw before, oppose*
- occido, occidĕre, occidi, occisus: *strike down, slay*
- ostendo, ostendĕre, ostendi, ostensus: *to show, expose*
- pareo, parēre, parui, paritus: *to be present, to wait on*
- pario, parĕre, peperi, paritus: *to bear, give birth to*
- percutio, percutĕre, percussi, percussus: *to strike, thrust or pierce through*
- perduco, perducĕre, perduxi, perductus: *to guide, lead through*
- pereo, perire, perivi *or* perii, peritus: *to pass away, vanish*
- persequor, persequi, -, persecutus: *to follow, chase, pursue*
- pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventus: *to come to, arrive at*
- peto, petĕre, petivi *or* petii, petitus: *to attack, demand, seek*
- polliceor, pollicēri, -, pollicitus: *to promise*
- pono, ponĕre, posui, positus: *to place*
- possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able*
- praecipito, praecipitare, praecipitavi, praecipitatus: *to cast down, to press, hasten*
- procreo, procreare, procreavi, procreatus: *to bring forth, beget*

- proficio, proficĕre, profeci, profectus: *to advance, make progress, obtain*
- proficiscor, proficisci, -, profectus: *to set out, depart*
- profugio, profugĕre, profugi, -: *to flee, escape*
- quaero, quaerĕre, quaesivi, quaesitus: *to seek for, acquire*
- rapio, rapĕre, rapui, raptus: *to seize and carry off*
- recipio, recipĕre, recepi, receptus: *regain, recover*
- redeo, redire, redivi *or* redii, reditus: *to go or come back, return*
- refero, referre, rettuli *or* retuli, relatus: *to return, restore*
- regno, regnare, regnavi, regnatus: *to rule*
- respondeo, respondēre, respondi, responsus: *to answer, reply*
- rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatus: *to ask*
- sacro, sacrare, sacravi, sacratus: *to consecrate, dedicate*
- sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi *or* sepelii, sepultus: *to bury*
- servo, servare, servavi, servatus: *to save, preserve*
- soleo, solēre, solui, solitus: *to be accustomed*
- sum, esse, fui, futurus: *to be*
- tollo, tollĕre, sustuli, sublatus: *to raise up, elevate*
- trado, tradĕre, tradidi, traditus: *to hand over, deliver, surrender*
- venio, venire, veni ventus: *to come*
- video, vidēre, vidi, visus: *to see*
- vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum: *to defeat, conquer*
- vivo, vivĕre, vixi, victus: *to live, be alive*
- voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus: *to call together, summon*
- volo, velle, volui, -: *to wish, want*

72 Most frequent nouns in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- amor, amoris *m*: *love*
- annus, anni *m*: *year*
- aper, apri *m*: *wild boar*
- aqua, aquae *f*: *water*
- arbor, arboris *f*: *tree*
- arma, armorum *n* (*pl* only): *arms, weapons*
- aurum, auri *n*: *gold*
- avis, avis *f*: *bird*
- beneficium, beneficii *n*: *s*
- canis, canis *m* or *f*: *dog*
- caput, capitis *n*: *head*
- conjugium, conjugii *n*: *marriage*
- conjunx, conjugis *m* or *f*: *husband, wife*
- corpus, corporis *n*: *body*
- deus, dei *m*: *god*
- dies, diei *m*: *day*
- draco, draconis *m*: *serpent, dragon*
- dux, ducis *m*: *leader*
- equus, equi *m*: *horse*
- femina, feminae *f*: *woman*
- fides, fidei *f*: *faith, trustworthiness*
- filia, filiae *f*: *daughter*
- filius, filii *m*: *son*
- flumen, fluminis *n*: *river*
- forma, formae *f*: *shape, appearance*
- frater, fratris *m*: *brother*
- fulmen, fulminis *n*: *lightning*
- gladius, gladii *m*: *sword*
- homo, hominis *m*: *human being*
- hospes, hospitis *m*: *host, guest*

- hospitium, hospitii *n*: *hospitality*
- infans, infantis *m* or *f*: *infant, small child*
- insula, insulae *f*: *island*
- liber, liberi *m*: *child*
- locus, loci *m*: *place*
- ludus, ludi *m*: *play, game*
- mare, maris *n*: *sea*
- mater, matris *f*: *mother*
- mons, montis *m*: *mountain*
- mors, mortis *f*: *death*
- munus, muneris *n*: *work, service, job*
- murus, muri *m*: *city wall*
- navis, navis *f*: *ship*
- nomen, nominis *n*: *name*
- nox, noctis *f*: *night*
- numerus, numeri *m*: *number*
- nutrix, nutricis *f*: *nurse*
- nympha, nymphae *f*: *nymph*
- oppidum, oppidi *n*: *town*
- parens, parentis *m*: *parent*
- pars, partis *f*: *part, portion*
- pastor, pastoris *m*: *shepherd*
- pater, patris *m*: *father*
- patria, patriae *f*: *home country*
- pecus, pecoris *n*: *cattle, herd*
- pellis, pellis *f*: *skin, hide*
- pes, pedis *m*: *foot*
- procus, proci *m*: *suitor*
- puer, pueri *m*: *boy*
- regnum, regni *n*: *kingdom*
- res, rei *f*: *thing, matter, affair*
- rex, regis *m*: *king*
- sacerdos, sacerdotis *m* or *f*: *priest, priestess*
- sagitta, sagitta *f*: *arrow*
- sepultura, sepulturae *f*: *burial*
- signum, signi *n*: *sign, token*
- sol, solis *m*: *sun*
- soror, sororis *f*: *sister*

- sors, sortis *f* : *lot, fate*
- stadium, stadii *n*: *stadium*
- taurus, tauri *m*: *bull*
- templum, templi *n*: *temple*
- tempus, temporis *n*: *time*
- terra, terrae *f* : *land, earth*
- uxor, uxoris *f* : *wife*
- vestis, vestis *f* : *clothing*
- vir, viri *m*: *man*
- virgo, virginis *f* : *young woman*
- voluntas, voluntatis *f* : *wish, will*

73 Most frequent adjectives in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· alius, alia, aliud: *another*
· alter, altera, alterum: *other* (*of two*)
· ceterus, cetera, ceterum: *the other, the remainder*
· duo, duae, duo (**irregular**): *two*
· idem, eadem, idem: *the same*
· inferus, infera, inferum: *lower*
· liber, libera, liberum: *free*
· magnus, magna, magnum: *great, large*
· mortalis, mortale: *mortal, subject to death*
· multus, multa, multum: *much* (*sg.*)*, many* (*pl.*)
· omnis, omnis: *each* (*sg.*)*, all* (*pl.*)
· primus, prima, primum: *first*
· regius, regia, regium: *royal, kingly*
· sacer, sacra, sacrum: *holy, sacred*
· septem (*indeclinable*): *seven*
· socius, socia, socium: *allied*
· suus, sua, suum: **reflexive possessive adjective*, his own, her own*
· tantus, tanta, tantum: *so great*
· unus, una, unum: *a single*

74 Most frequent adverbs in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

- ibi: *there*
- inde: *from there*
- ita: *so*
- item: *likewise, also*
- non: *not*
- postea: *later*
- tunc: *then*

75 Most frequent conjunctions in Hyginus, *Fabulae*

· atque *or* ac: and, and besides, and even
· autem: however, nonetheless
· cum: when
· dum: while
· et: and
· itaque: and so, accordingly
· nam: for
· neque *or* nec: not, and not, also not
· ne: *conjunction introducing several kinds of negative clauses*
· postquam: after
· quia: since
· quod: because
· quoniam: since
· sed: but
· sive: or
· si: if
· ubi: where, when
· unde: from where
· ut: *conjunction introducting several kinds of subordinate clauses*